Ministry of Finance & National Economy

Standard Finance Manual

Version 1.1

Table of Contents

Glossary of Terms

Terms	Definition
Financial Systems Development Directorate	The directorate responsible for supervising central financial systems and government accounts, developing systems of standard financial manual, and controlling of government assets and stocks at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Government Central Procurement Directorate	The directorate responsible for supervising central procurement at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Budget Directorate	The directorate responsible for managing the state's public budget at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Central Efficiency Directorate	The directorate responsible for supervising recurrent expenditures of government at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Project Directorate	The directorate responsible for supervising of disbursing from budget of government projects at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Public Revenue Policy Directorate	The directorate responsible for setting the state's public revenue policy at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Payment and Collection Directorate	The directorate responsible for payment, and managing of revenue collection tools at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Finance Operations Directorate	The directorate responsible for finance operations at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Government Property Affairs Directorate	The directorate responsible for supervising government properties at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
International Relations Directorate	The directorate responsible for international relations at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Acquisition and Compensation Directorate	The directorate responsible for processing requests of lands acquisition at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning.

Social Assistance Directorate	The directorate of social assistance at the Ministry of Labour and Social Development.
Lands Acquisition	Expropriation of real estate ??? to implement a project for public benefit, in accordance with the provisions and procedures specified in the Acquisition Law.
External Revenue	Revenue due to government for transactions with suppliers from outside the Kingdom of Bahrain, whether collected inside or outside the kingdom.
Building rehabilitation	Maintenance work that includes all the work involved in the comprehensive maintenance, works that result of radical changes in the design of the building through redistribution of internal spaces or expansion of the building.
Temporary seizure	Placing the possession temporarily and by direct execution on the real estate in accordance with the law Expropriation.
Assets improvement	Any change to the asset that leads to its improvement, such as extending the life of the asset, or improving its use or effectiveness.
Budget rotation	Transferring the remaining balance from one period's budget to another period
Authorization of financial transaction	Approval to conduct a financial transaction by either signing the financial documents related to it electronically or on paper, or by entering approval orders for it in the Central Financial System.
The amount	A sum of amount that government authority collects from their clients in exchange for government economic services of a competitive nature.
Government Authority/requester or applicant	The government authority which receives the service.
Government Authority	Any of the ministries, bodies, organizations and government authorities that are subject to the provisions of the Public Budget Law.
State Cases Authority	The State Cases Authority at the Ministry of Justice, Islamic affairs and Waqf.
The government	Government of Kingdom of Bahrain

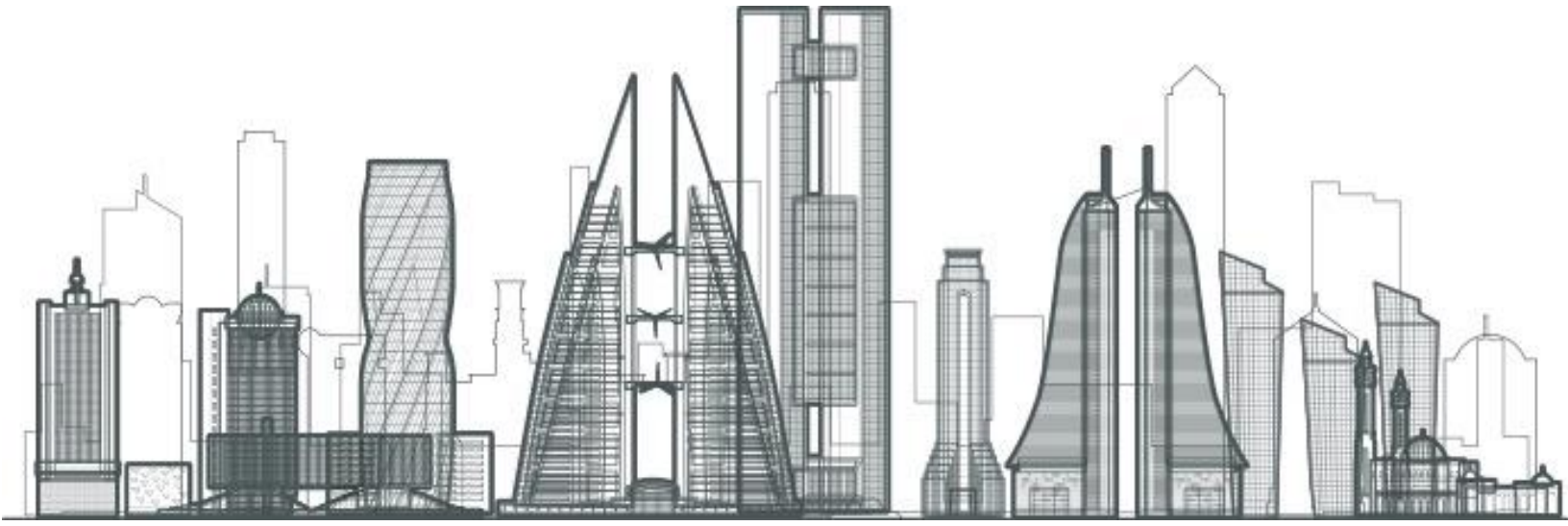
The public Account	Group of bank accounts supervised by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and used to deposit revenue and finance government expenditures.
Upper limit	Part of an inventory control system that determines the upper level of storage for a particular good.
Lower limit	A part of an inventory control system that defines the minimum level for stocking a particular commodity, and is usually used for the purpose of identifying safe stocks.
Suspended account	An account in which the accounting operations are temporarily recorded before posting to the correct or final account.
Spending plan	Plan that includes expected recurrent expenditures during a future period.
The fast service	A service that is charged for a fee to the requester within a shorter period of time than the normal period, provided that it is provided optionally and does not fall within the scope of public services which provided by ministries and government authorities, and the financial compensation for the service is determined in accordance with the provisions of the government services pricing system that mentioned in this manual.
The manual	Standard Financial Manual
Doubtful debts	Breakdown of collectible amounts that are past due by one day and up to 10 years.
Uncollectible debts	Classification of past due amounts, and the following conditions apply to them: 1. It has been due for more than 10 years. 2. All possible steps have been exhausted to collect them.
Bad debts	Classification of past due amounts, and the following conditions apply to them: 1. It has been due for more than 15 years. 2. All possible steps have been exhausted to collect them. 3. The amount has been classified as uncollectible.

The fee	A sum of amount that government authorities collect from their clients in exchange for government services that they provide uniquely.
Fiscal year	For the purpose of preparing financial reports, the period of the fiscal year for the state's public budget is twelve months, beginning on the first of January and ending on the thirty-first of December of each year.
Fixed asset record	Record within the Central Financial System that includes the basic data of the assets.
Maintenance	Any work that preserves the condition of the asset but does not lead to improvements to it.
Comprehensive maintenance	Civil and structural maintenance works (such as interior and exterior painting, crack repair, ceiling and floor repair, and other works), mechanical work (such as networks and water tanks), and electrical work (such as electrical distribution panels, lamps, etc.). In addition, maintenance of information technology is a form of maintenance that government authority may undertake, and it may include information technology devices and other specialized equipment.
Preventive maintenance	Electrical, mechanical and civil maintenance works that are directly related to operational matters and aims to preserve the condition of the building and extend its useful life by fixing operational defects before they occur.
Taxes	Amount of money that people or authorities are obligated to pay it to government according to a legislative law, and it is a contribution from these parties in financing government costs, and without these parties having any direct benefit behind the payment of these amounts.
Unified purchase contract	An agreement between one or more government authorities and one or more suppliers to provide goods and/or services. It usually contains general terms and conditions and associated with it other supplementary contracts that include a more

	detailed scope of work, and used to integrate joint procurement needs from multiple parties.
Supplementary contracts	Contracts linked to unified purchase contracts include a more detailed scope of work.
Useful life	The estimated life of the asset that it is likely to remain in service.
Budget period	The period that covers a maximum of two years or as determined by the Cabinet.
Shared financial services sector	Directorates affiliated to the Assistant Undersecretary for Shared Services at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Market value or fair value	The price that can be obtained in exchange for selling a specific asset through an orderly transaction between several participants in an active market, on the measurement date.
beneficiary	A natural or ?? person entitled to obtain economic benefits from a government authority.
Financial resources director	The director responsible for financial resources (or equivalent) in the concerned government authority.
Office of Legal Affairs	The Office of Legal Affairs at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Claim	A party who is entitled to receive money or compensation from another party due to a complaint according to specific terms in the contract.
The supplier	The provider of service or goods to the government, including merchants, contractors, and the like.
The kingdom	Kingdom of Bahrain
Project expenditures	Expenditures that fall under Chapter Eight of the state public budget.
Recurrent expenditures	Expenditures that fall under Chapters 1 to 7 of the state public budget.
Central Financial System	The financial system supervised by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and used in controlling the implementation of the state's public budget and the preparation of government accounts. This term refers to the financial system used in controlling the budget of ministries and non-independent government authorities (CFS), in

	addition to the financial system used in controlling the budget implementation of independent government authorities (GFO) unless either of them is explicitly specified in the context of the text.
The Accounting system	The electronic system used for entering and recording the financial transactions and conducting the accounting operations.

1. Introduction



General description of the section		
The coverage	Definition of the objectives of Standard Finance Manual, and determine of scope of applicability, mechanism and validity of issuance, and procedures of updating.	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**The Directorate**	**The responsibilities**
	Financial Systems Development Directorate	- it supervises the process of developing and updating the systems of Standard Finance Manual.
	The other concerned directorates at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy	- Submitting the proposals for developing the systems of the manual, explaining and clarifying the financial provisions and procedures for the users according to the specialization of each directorate.

1.1 Definition of the Manual

The objective:

.1.1.1. This manual aims to protect and preserve the public fund and government resources by developing unified financial and control policies and procedures for managing and implementing financial operations related to government revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities, in an efficient, effective, economic and transparent manner.

.1.1.2. This manual is used as a reference by the government authorities for implementing the public budget, controlling the government assets and funds, and recording financial and accounting operations by government authorities.

The coverage:

.1.1.3. The procedures specified in this manual represent the minimum level of control, and government authorities may apply regulatory procedures that achieve a better control level, after coordination with the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.1.1.4. Governmental authorities are bound - in addition to the provisions of this manual - with applicable financial and supervisory legislations, decisions, and circulars issued by the competent authorities.

Scope of applicability:

.1.1.5. The provisions of this manual shall apply to all government authorities in accordance with the monitoring mechanism applied in implementing their budgets, and without prejudice to the special financial systems that are established for any of them.

Version validity:

.1.1.6. The responsibility for issuing and updating the systems of this standard finance manual is confined to the Minister of Finance and National Economy, and his authority in this regard is based on Article No. (59) of Decree-Law No. (39) of 2002 regarding the state's public budget, which stipulates that “the minister shall issue the necessary regulations, decisions and instructions To implement the provisions of this law, ... ".

.1.1.7. The Financial Systems Development Directorate is responsible for preserving the original copies of the manual and supervising the process of updating its systems to reflect changes and developments in government policies, legislations and financial and control procedures in coordination with the relevant directorates in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and other concerned authorities, and to ensure the consistency and harmony of all systems of the manual and the appropriateness of its contents in terms of the style, presentation and arrangement.

.1.1.8. The concerned directorates in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and government authorities must provide the Financial Systems Development Directorate with copies of all financial decisions or circulars they issue that affect the provisions and procedures of this manual and any other data or documents that enable the directorate to study and prepare proposals to develop its systems and procedures.

.1.1.9. The concerned directorates at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy are responsible for clarifying the provisions and procedures of this manual to the users, according to their respective specialization.

.1.1.10. The Financial Systems Development Directorate is responsible for issuing and amending the financial forms stipulated in the systems of this manual, and the government authority may design and use financial forms for the purpose of using them internally, according to the requirements and nature of work in the government authority.

Updating the Manual

.1.1.11. This manual should be subject to periodic updating by reviewing its provisions and procedures in the light of updates and developments in legislation and government policies.

.1.1.12. The systems of the manual are updated with two types of versions: comprehensive versions and partial versions. The comprehensive version includes a complete change of the manual in terms of structure, contents and method of presentation and takes place every five years, as for the partial version is limited to partial amendments in some of the contents, provisions and procedures of the manual, based on what is issued from government legislations or policies, and this amendment is made every 6 months.

.1.1.13. Each version of the manual must carry a reference number according to the following format:

Sub-version No.	Main Version No.
X	X

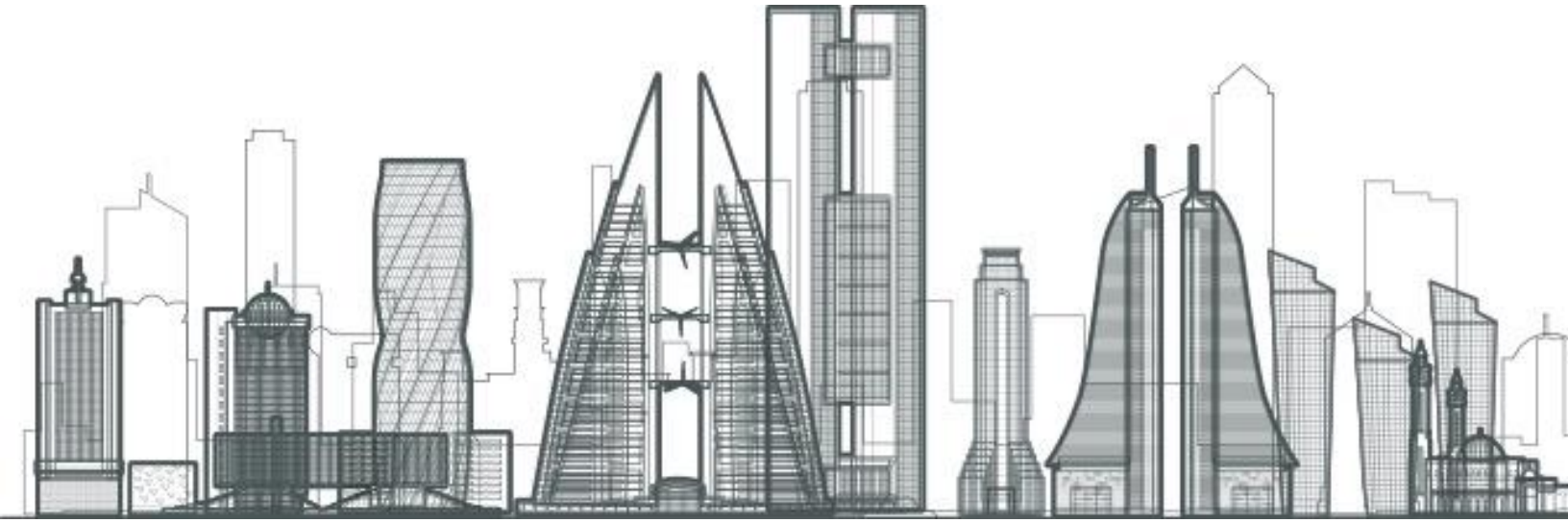
.1.1.14. Users should specify the manual version number when referring to clauses' numbers to ensure that the reference number for the updated content of the manual is correct.

Contents of the manual

.1.1.15. This manual includes main sections and subsections. The section may contain one or more appendices for clarifications or templates of forms, as needed.

.1.1.16. Each main section begins with a Summary that includes its contents in general, and the names of the directorates of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy supervising the operations and procedures contained therein, for reference by government authorities regarding any inquiries related to the implementation of those provisions and procedures.

2. The Financial & Accounting System



General description of the section		
The coverage	Defining the financial and accounting system used in recording and adjusting government financial transactions, closing financial periods, and determining the policies and supervisory provisions and authorities regulating the process of recording and authorizing these transactions.	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**The Directorate**	**The responsibilities**
	Financial Systems Development Directorate	- Supervising the Central Financial System and determining the accounting treatments in the light of the approved policies, and supervising the process of posting inputs and journal entries in that system.
	Project Directorate	- Authorizing the financial transactions and budget adjustments related to projects.
	Central Efficiency Directorate	- Authorizing financial transactions related to recurrent expenditures.

	Budget Directorate	- Authorizing adjustments to the budget of recurrent expenditures.
	Payment and collection Directorate	- Authorizing payments and government revenue inputs.
	International Relations Directorate	- Authorizing of subscriptions payments to regional and international bodies or organizations.

2.1 Recording financial transactions

.2.1.1 The Bahraini dinar is used in recording financial transactions, and accordingly the value of foreign currency transactions must be converted into the Bahraini dinar using the immediate exchange rate on the date of the transaction or the average price during a specific date in case there is no significant fluctuations.

.2.1.2 All cash balances held in foreign currencies are converted to local currency exchange rate at closing.

.2.1.3 Financial transactions must be recorded in the financial and accounting records, according to the standard classification of expenditures, revenues, assets and liabilities, approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

The main accounting policies

.2.1.4 The modified cash accounting basis is applied in proofing and recording financial operations and preparing financial statements, as specified in this section.

Recording Revenue

.2.1.5 The received public funds are recorded as government revenues in the fiscal year in which public funds are collected and received. The funds that are excluded under the laws from transfer to the public account are not recorded in government revenues, as well as funds received as a trust, guarantee or surety.

.2.1.6 **Debts owed to the government:** debts owed to the government are reclassified when they are late to be settled, according to what is specified in the revenue section of this manual.

.2.1.7 **Funds excluded from transferring to the public account or from expending from it:** A disclosure within the final accounts of the ministry or the government authority should be stated of funds that excluded under the laws from transferring to the public account or from disbursement from it, the statement provided should include the amounts of these funds, the nature and aspects of disbursement out of the approved appropriations of budget of the public budget, and

the revenues that have been transferred to other accounts rather than the public account.

.2.1.8 **Revenue correction:** The wrong recorded revenue is corrected according to the following:

A. The error is adjusted in the same account in which the revenue is recorded, if the error is discovered before the final closing of the fiscal year accounts to which it relates.
B. If the correction is for recording amounts received during the year whose accounts are to be corrected or to return amounts received as error related to revenue recorded in that year, and the error was discovered after the final closing of the accounts for that year, then the adjustment must be made in the following net assets account:

Adjustments to Prior Years Revenues (XX.000000.000.31014.00.00000000)

Recording expenditures

.2.1.19 Expenditures are recorded according to the following:

A. **Manpower expenditures:** The manpower expenditures are recorded in the year in which they are due.

B. **Goods and services expenditures:** excluding the value of stored goods, the value of services and goods that were received and accepted during the fiscal year is considered as an expenditure.

C. **Stored goods expenditures:** The materials and spare parts disbursed from the stock system in the central financial system to the cost centers in ministries and government authorities are considered as expenditures.
D. **Capital goods expenditures:** The value of capital goods purchases are recorded as expenditures in the fiscal year in which they are received and accepted.
E. **Transfer expenditures, aids and subsidies:** Transfer expenditures, subsidies, grants and aids are recorded as expenditures for the fiscal year in which they are due, and these expenditures are considered due if conditions

for the disbursement to the beneficiary are fulfilled in accordance with the laws or regulations governing them.

F. **Loans interest:** Interest on loans owed by the government is recorded as an expenditure in the fiscal year in which it is due.

G. **Capital project expenditures:** It is considered as an expenditure what is owed to suppliers for the stages or parts of the project that have been completed during the fiscal year.

.2.1.10 **Expenditures correction:** The expenditure which is recorded wrongly is corrected by returning it to the same account in which it was recorded if the error was discovered before the final closing of the accounts for the fiscal year to which it relates, and if the error was discovered after the final closing of the accounts for the fiscal year to which it relates, it is closed in the following net assets account:

Adjustments to Prior Years Expenditures (XX.000000.000.31015.00.00000000)

The government authority should take the necessary procedures to collect the amounts due to it from the debtor party, if the settlement was made to recover an expenditure paid in error.

.2.1.11 **Recording of expenditure after the final closure of the accounts:** The expenditure that was not recorded in the accounts of the government authority before the final closing of the accounts for the fiscal year that pertains to it is processed by sending a settlement request from the government authority to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, to undertake the study and decision on the request, either by calculating it within The expenditure of the current fiscal year in the absence of acceptable justifications for not recording it during the period preceding the closing of the accounts for the period that pertains to it, or settling it within the net assets account set forth in Paragraph No. (.2.1) in the case of acceptance the justifications of the government authority, the request provided should be approved by the minister or his equivalent in the relevant government authority, and include a statement of the justifications for non-registration, and attach all supporting documents with the request.

.2.1.12 **Expenditure recording from rotated appropriations of budget:** Expenditures that are made from appropriations of budget that are approved to be rotated by the Minister of Finance and National Economy from one fiscal year to the next fiscal year are recorded as expenditures in the fiscal year in which the disbursement takes place.

Preparation of financial documents:

.2.1.13 The competent accountant shall be responsible for preparing the financial documents and entering the financial records in accordance with the provisions and procedures specified for this, provided that they are approved and authorized by the authorized job level in accordance with the authority levels system specified in this manual, taking into account the following:

A. Preparing the financial documents at the specified times, attaching all the related documents, and referring them for review and approval.

B. Keeping financial records in accordance with the prescribed accounting system and using them for what they are allotted.

C. Entering in the records on a regular basis, and to ensure the accuracy, validity and integrity of the financial data.

D. Verifying the correctness of directing accounting entries to the appropriate accounts according to the classification of the state public budget.

E. Make the necessary matches between the sum of the total column and the sums of the analytical columns.

F. Verifying the application correctness of financial laws and regulations and instructions related to financial affairs.

G. Maintaining documents and records in accordance with the laws and instructions in a good condition that allows for review and auditing at any time.

.2.1.14 The errors contained in financial documents may be amended by placing the error in parentheses and adding the amended statement above it or next to it, and signing the amendment by the same job level that approved the document, and the error may not be crossed out or removed.

.2.1.15 The financial documents containing scraping or amendment which are not approved shall not be accepted.

Recording and Entering the financial data

.2.1.16 The amounts entered into the central financial system must be supported by sufficient evidentiary evidence for the transactions they relate to, and in order for this evidence to be acceptable, it must fulfill the following conditions:

A. Be related to the subject of the transaction.

B. It has not been subject to unauthorized modification.

C. Clear and easily readable contents.

D. Authorized by the concerned party if required.

.2.1.17 All financial records must be kept trackable and linked to the financial transactions to which they relate.

.2.1.18 The following responsibilities should be separated in the central financial system:

A. Data entry (preparing and entering journal entries).

B. Data review (verifying the correctness of the entered data).

C. Data authority (Authorizing of data approval in the system).

.2.1.19 The employee allows, in cases that require that, combine the responsibilities of reviewing and authorizing the data, and he is not allowed in all cases enter and review or enter and authorize the same financial transaction.

.2.1.20 In the cases where the responsibility for entry cannot be separated from the authorities of reviewing and authorizing data in the central financial system, it is allowed after exploring and evaluating all other possible options and finding that none of them are suitable, the Assistant Undersecretary of Financial Operations at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy may agree to authorize one employee to combine between those responsibilities.

.2.1.21 In all cases, the reviewer must not be less than the level of data entry employee.

.2.1.22 In case of an error in the accounting records, the entry is reversed by making adjustment entries and the original entry is not cancelled.

Central Financial System

.2.1.23 The central financial systems supervised by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy must be used to implement the budget and record government financial transactions, as follows:

A. The Central Financial System (CFS), which is used by all ministries, in addition to government authorities that are obligated to supply their revenues to the state's public account and do not have the authority to keep their financial surpluses in accordance with the law.

B. The Financial System of Independent Government Authorities (GFO), used by government authorities that do not supply their revenues to the state's public account and have the authority to keep their financial surpluses in accordance with the law.

2.2 Closing Accounts

General Provisions

.2.2.1 The Ministry of Finance and National Economy regularly closes accounts as follows:

A. Monthly on the 20th of the following month.

B. Semi-annual on 20 July for the period ending on 30 June of each fiscal year.

C. Annually, and its date is set by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy with the end of the fiscal year.

2.2.2. The Financial Systems Development Directorate sends financial reports for expenditures and revenues to government authorities, which in turn review and match these reports with their accounts and internal reports, and provide the mentioned directorate with any required adjustments or amendments within ten days of receiving these reports.

.2.2.3 Government authorities submit any requests to amend the financial data for the period in which their accounts have been closed to the Assistant Undersecretary of Financial Operations at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, provided that they are supported by acceptable justifications for not submitting them before the closing date, and submitted to the Minister of Finance and National Economy if the amendment pertains to a closed fiscal year. .

.2.2.4. The following directorates at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy shall review the adjustments entries related to the closing of the end of the fiscal year, according to the following:

The directorate	Nature of transaction
Public Revenue Policies Directorate	Entries related to revenue
Project Directorate	Entries related to projects expenditures
Central Efficiency Directorate and Budget Directorate	Entries related to recurrent expenditures

Closing instructions:

.2.2.5 It must be adhered with the implementation of the necessary procedures in accordance with the instructions set forth below regarding the entry, registration and adjustment of any financial transactions before the dates of the monthly and semi-annually closing of accounts, and any other additional instructions issued by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy related to the annual closing:

A. Revenue and accounts receivable:

1. Recording all the revenues received during the financial period in the general ledger accounts, and transferring them to the bank accounts designated for this purpose.

2. Take the necessary administrative procedures to follow up on the collection of amounts owed to the government which are not received and supply them to the public account, and make the necessary matching and adjustments to the bank

accounts designated for depositing that revenues and sending them to the Payment and Collection Directorate.

3. List the revenues due to the government, and the amounts that have been reclassified, and notifying the Office of the Assistant Undersecretary for Financial Policies and Budget, and the Payments and Collection Directorate of this Ministry of the amounts of those debts, their chronological age, and what has been done in each case.

4. List any exemptions from paying fees or taxes due to the government, with a statement of the legal basis that supports granting these exemptions.

5. Verify the correctness of directing the revenue on the appropriate tab, and prepare the necessary accounting entries to correct and adjust any errors in the recording.

6. Return the amounts that were recorded by mistake as revenues to their owners, and prepare the necessary adjustment entries to correct them, and notify the Office of the Assistant Undersecretary for Financial Policies and Budget at this Ministry of these changes and indicate their reasons and the details related to them.

7. List the uncollected returned checks and deduct them from revenues if they were recorded at the time of receiving those checks.

B. Expenditures and Obligations:

1. Recording the receipt of goods and services actually received during the period in the procurement system, and making sure that the correctness of registration according to the period of receipt.

2. Obtaining the prior approval for expending, in accordance with the circulars issued by this Ministry.

3. Require from the suppliers to submit their invoices for any services or goods received during the period and to enter them in the system, and pass them for payment.

4. Reconciling of any expenditures recorded manually within the obligations' accounts No. (20015 and 20012) that have been passed and calculated from the recurrent expenditures budget for the current year.

5. Cancelling recurrent expenditures purchase orders that are no longer needed.

6. Preparing the necessary adjustment entries to correct the expenditures that were paid and recorded in error within the period accounts, and follow up the returning procedures.

7. Take the necessary procedures to settle any claims or obligations related to previous financial years that have been posted to the current year, knowing that this procedure applies to obligations related to recurrent expenditures and project expenditures.

8. Take the necessary procedures to correct or cancel any expenditures recorded as accrued expenditure for previous years, and it was found that there was an error in recording.

9. Take the necessary procedures to record and adjust any expenditures related to transactions with ministries and other government authorities.

10. Complete all documents necessary for the payment of subsidies and transfers that meet the eligibility conditions under the laws regulating them.

11. Instructing the government authorities which are operating outside the Kingdom to send their accounts related to the period, and update the reports of financial results accordingly.

12. Completing the procedures for paying the employees' dues and salaries related to the period and sending the related documents to the Civil Service Authority.

C. Cash and bank balances:

1. Settlement of all permanent and temporary cash covenants in order to record the used amounts from the replenishment within the expenditures of the period.

2. An actual stocktaking of the fund by a competent accountant and in the presence of the treasurer at the end of the last day of the period, with an explanation of the reasons for any differences between the actual stocktaking balance and the final book balance.

3. Settlement of differences between bank accounts balances and accounts balances in the central financial system.

4. Valuation of foreign currencies balances according to the common rates on the last day of the period.

5. Return the amounts of trusts kept with the government authority whose purpose has ended, to their beneficiaries.

D. Fixed Assets:

1. Recording all fixed assets that were acquired during the period or in previous periods in the fixed assets register and excluding all assets that were disposed of or sold from that register.

2. The Financial Systems Development Directorate prepares the fixed assets matching for all ministries and government authorities on a monthly basis and sends it to those concerned in government authorities, in order to clarify all the differences between the fixed assets system and the general ledger in the central financial system.

Government authority must do what is necessary to settle all the differences and related adjustments shown in the matching of fixed assets by recording the outstanding invoices for purchases of fixed assets in the fixed asset register system, in addition to settling all the differences between the fixed asset register system and the general ledger in the central financial system depending on the last matching made.

3. The differences arising between the fixed assets and general ledger systems are dealt with for each asset separately:

- If the fixed asset amount is recorded with an incorrect value, the asset value is adjusted in the fixed asset system to match the invoice amount in the general ledger.
- If the value of the fixed asset recorded is correct, it is possible to review the expending tab in the general ledger, and make a manual adjustment to amend the expending directive with the value of the difference until the amount of expending matches with the value of the asset.

.2.3 Accounts Structure

General Provisions

.2.3.1 The Ministry of Finance and National Economy maintains a centralized and unified structure for government accounts within the Central Financial System, and is supervised by the Financial Systems Development Directorate.

.2.3.2 Each account must have a specific identification and may not be used to record any transaction that does not fit with this identification.

.2.2.3 Any amendment to the account structure shall be made by submitting an request to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.2.3.4 In the case, any decisions affecting the organizational structure of a government authority are issued, the budget and account structure of that authority must be amended to reflect the appropriate distribution in accordance with those decisions.

Modifying accounts (create a new account or amend an existing account)

.2.3.5 Government authority may submit requests to make an amendment to the accounts structure in the following cases:

A. The items currently in place are not sufficient to meet the recording and reporting requirements.

B. Improving data presentation and reporting.

C. Making structural adjustments in the government authority.

.2.3.6 The request for approval to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy depends on making adjustments to the accounts and items of the budget, by the director of the financial resources of the government authority.

.2.3.7 In the case that the accounts are amended due to structural changes in the government authority, the amendment must be based on the structure approved by the Civil Service Bureau.

.2.3.8 The cancelled accounts based on structural changes in the government authority or accounts which remain unused (no entries were passed on) must be suspended for a year, in order to prevent any unauthorized transactions from being passed through them.

.2.3.9 The Financial Systems Development Directorate is authorized to reactivate the suspended accounts, and any requests in this regard must be directed to this directorate.

Account amendment procedures

.2.3.10 Adjustment is made in the accounts according to the following procedures:

A. The government authority shall prepare an account amendment request and it shall be approved by the Director of Financial Resources (or equivalent), the request includes the following:

1. The name of the account to be modified.
2. Details of the account to be modified.
3. Justifications for the amendment request.
4. Other related details.
5. Attachments that support the existence/occurrence of the specified transaction.
6. In case of structural changes, the following must be clarified and attached:
    - The legal basis for the amendment.
    - The revised organizational structure after approval by the Civil Service Bureau.
7. If the account is related to revenue, the following must be clarified and attached:
    - The number of services and a brief Summary thereof.
    - The legal basis for amendment.

- The expected revenue to be obtained from the specified services during the two-year period.
- Form for “creating / activating a new item in the Central Financial System” no. (RPD-ACC-01).

8. If the account is related to a project, the following must be clarified and attached:

• Initial approval of the project.

• The project is included in the development plan.

• Project Approval Request Form no. (1801).

B. After that, the Director of Financial Resources or equivalent sends the request to the concerned Directorate in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

C. In the case that all requirements are completed, the account is created, links are formed, and budgets are assigned to each item in the Central Financial System by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

D. In the cases where this is required, the government authority shall reflect the changes within the disbursement plans.

E. A notification will be sent to the affected government authorities of the changes made, with an explanation of the account descriptions and instructions about the permitted use.

F. The government authority verifies the accuracy and correctness of account creation.

.2.4 **Financial Authorities**

General provisions

.2.4.1 It is not allowed to authorize any documents or financial transactions except by authorized employees in accordance with this system, and the employee who authorizes documents or financial transactions other than what he is authorized for, shall carry the legal responsibility arising therefrom.

.2.4.2 It is not allowed for any employee log in to the central financial system unless he is authorized to do so.

.2.4.3 The job levels responsible for authorizing the financial transactions are divided into the following administrative levels (or equivalent) according to the government authority's regulation decree:

A. Minister

B. Undersecretary

C. Assistant undersecretary

D. Director

E. Head of section

F. Head of group or unit, or any supervisory function related to financial affairs directly below the level of head section.

G. Accountant or any other financial affairs position below the level of head of group or unit.

.2.4.4 In government authority whose approved job structure does not include the job levels specified in this system, the job levels mentioned in their structure are equated with the job levels specified in this system, according to the government authority's organization decree or according to the administrative organization approved by the Civil Service Bureau.

.2.4.5 Financial authorities are granted to employees responsible for financial affairs based on their responsibilities and job descriptions, but it is allowed - with the exception - to authorize other employees in case of that there are justifications that require it, and for the purposes of training and rehabilitation, temporary authorities may be granted to employees of the government authority who are not responsible for financial affairs or trainees from outside the government authority to enter financial transactions into the central financial system, and they are not allowed to grant for review authority or approval.

.2.4.6 When the authority of financial transactions is granted for a temporary period, the start and end date of these authorities must be determined, provided that these authorities are canceled at the end of that period.

.2.4.7 Financial transactions authorization are granted according to form "Notice of Authority Levels" no. (1501), provided that it is approved by the higher job level which grants financial authorities for a lower job level, provided that the job level that approves the form is not less than a director of directorate.

.2.4.8 The approval of form "Notice of Authority Levels" no. (1501) must be supported by documents, in particular the following:

A. The job description for authorized employees.

B. The decision to delegate in the case that an employee is assigned to perform the duties of another employee.

C. Justifications in the case that employees who are not affiliated with financial resources are granted the authority to authorize financial transactions.

D. Evidence that the job levels are equal to the job levels specified in this system for government authority whose job structure is different.

.2.4.9 The form "Notice of Authority Levels" no. (1501) approved by government authority is submitted to the Financial Systems Development Directorate, and accordingly this directorate sends a copy of the form to the concerned directorate in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.2.4.10 The directors of financial resources in government authorities are allowed to transfer the financial authorities in the central financial system through this system

to those authorized to approve in accordance with the provisions and procedures specified in this section.

.2.4.11 The financial transactions authorization is divided into two types:

A. Document authorization: authorization of documents related to a financial transaction, whether by hand-written signature or electronic signature for government authorities that apply the electronic signature in their transaction, and financial documents are not allowed to be signed using other methods such as signing with a seal or using a pre-printed signature on papers or copies.

B. The approval in the system: approving of the financial transaction in the central financial system.

.2.4.12 The cost of taxes on purchases is calculated within the total cost which is determined on the basis of the authorization level of relevant financial transactions described in this section.

.2.4.13 Financial transactions are authorized according to the authority levels specified in this section, and the Financial Systems Development Directorate determines the authority levels for authorizing any other transactions that are not included within the levels specified in this manual.

.2.4.14 Documents and financial transactions of government authorities are subject to authorization by those authorized in that government authorities and in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, in accordance with what is specified in this subsection, and it applies to financial transactions that fall under the responsibility of the Human and Financial Resources Directorate at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, the levels of authority specified for government authorities.

.2.4.15 If the amendment of the financial document results in exceeding the total value of the document after the amendment of the employee authority level who originally authorized the document, the amended document must be authorized by the higher job level in accordance with the authority levels within this section.

Responsibilities of the employee authorized for the financial transactions authorization

.2.4.16 The employee authorized for financial transactions authorization must comply with the following:

A. Not to authorize the financial transactions that relate to expending of financial dues related to him.

B. Verifying of the correctness and completeness of the transactions before authorizing them.

C. Ensure that there is an official authorization for the employee who authorized the document according to the procedures specified in this section, when authorizing the financial transaction in the system based on a financial document authorized by another employee.

D. Maintaining the confidentiality of the log in data of the central financial system and the password assigned to it, and not allowing the others to use it in authorizing of financial transactions who is originally authorized for, and bearing responsibility for all transactions that are authorized under his log in data.

E. Not to authorize financial transactions whose value exceeds the financial levels specified for him in this manual, except in cases where he is appointed as acting to a higher job level for a temporary period by a decision from the competent authority.

Levels of Authority

Authorization of recurrent expenditures

.2.4.17 The Financial Resources Directorate (or equivalent) only in the government authority may submit purchase requests and orders to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for approval.

.2.4.18 The approval of the purchase requisition must be obtained in advance before getting the approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate on purchase orders.

.2.4.19 The (Receipt) of goods and services and the (Delivery) in the central financial system must not be authorized by the same employee.

.2.4.20 Petty cash expenditures are approved according to the policy specified in the recurrent expenditures section of the manual.

.2.4.21 Any transfer of the budget from one government authority to another must be approved by the Minister of Finance and National Economy.

.2.4.22 Authority levels apply to authorize financial transactions related to recurrent expenditures, as shown in the following tables:

Financial Transaction	Purchase Request			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Director	All the amounts	All the amounts	All the amounts	All the amounts
Head of section	Up to 25,000	Up to 25,000	Up to 100,000	Up to100,000
Head of group	Up to 3,000	Up to 3,000	Not applicable	Up to 25,000

1.1.3. * In the case of emergency purchase requests, the following levels of authority are applied in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy to authorize these requests:

1.1.4. A. Up to BD 25,000: Can be authorized by the Undersecretary.

B. All amounts: Minister of Finance and National Economy.

Financial Transaction	Purchase order and contract			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Minister	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Undersecretary	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 500,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Director	Up to 100,000	All amounts	All amounts	All amounts
Head of section	Up to 1,000	Up to 50,000	Up to 50,000	All amounts
Head of group	Not applicable	Up to 3,000	Up to 25,000	Up to 50,000

Financial Transaction	Amendment in the budget of recurrent expenditures			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Undersecretary	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable	All amounts	All amounts
Director	Up to 500,000	Not applicable	Up to 500,000	All amounts
Head of section	Not applicable	Not applicable	Up to 100,000	All amounts
Accountant	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	All amounts

Authorization of Project expenditures

.2.4.23 Levels of authority apply to authorize financial transactions related to project expenditures, as shown in the following tables:

Financial Transaction	Initial approval of a new project			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Minister	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Undersecretary	Up to 2,000,000	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable

Financial Transaction	Approval of availability of required budgets for the project			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Minister	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Undersecretary	Up to 2,000,000	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable
Director	Up to 500,000	Not applicable	Up to 500,000	Not applicable

Financial Transaction	Approval for award or amend a project contract			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Assistant undersecretary	All amounts	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Director	Up to 500,000	Not applicable	Up to 500,000	Not applicable
Head of section	Not applicable	Not applicable	Up to 100,000	Not applicable

Financial Transaction	Authorization of purchases for implementation of projects			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Minister	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Undersecretary	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 500,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Director	Up to 100,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	More than 9,999
Head of section	Up to 1,000	Up to 9,999	Not applicable	More than 9,999
Head of group	Not applicable	Up to 3,000	Not applicable	More than 9,999
Accountant	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	More than 9,999

Authorization of revenue

.2.4.24 The authority levels for the authorization of revenue entry documents are applied as shown in the following table:

Financial Transaction	Authorization of documents and input entries and amendment of revenue			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Director	All amounts	All amounts	All amounts	All amounts
Head of section	Up to 100,000	Up to 100,000	Up to 1,000,000	Up to 1,000,000
Head of group	Up to 10,000	Up to 10,000	Up to 500,000	Up to 500,000
Accountant	Not applicable	Not applicable	Up to 100,000	Up to 100,000

Authorization of payments

.2.4.25 Payment of bills is authorized in the Central Financial System according to the value of each invoice, and the bill payment request document (payment forms or billing record and the like) that includes more than one invoice according to the total value of the bills or payment certificates within the request is approved.

.2.4.26 Payment requests must be accompanied by a purchase order for both recurrent and project expenditures.

.2.4.27 In addition to the authority levels specified in this section for payments, any payment request related to the payment of subscriptions in regional and international

bodies or organizations must be approved in advance by the Director of International Relations.

.2.4.28 Authority levels for payment authorization apply as shown in the following table:

Financial Transaction	Authorization of local payments			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Director	Not applicable	All amounts	According to authority levels of payment authorization from public bank accounts	All amounts
Head of section	Not applicable	Up to 100,000		Up to 100,000
Head of group	Not applicable	Up to 50,000		Up to 50,000
Accountant	Not applicable	Up to 25,000		Up to 25,000

Financial Transaction	Request for payment a purchase invoice of more than BD 50 that is not supported by a contract or purchase order, and justifications for not issuing the purchase order or signing a contract			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Minister	All amounts	Not applicable	According to authority levels of payment authorization from public bank accounts	Not applicable
Undersecretary	Up to 200,000	Not applicable		Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 100,000	Not applicable		Not applicable
Director	Up to 50,000	All amounts		All amounts
Head of section	Not applicable	Up to 100,000		Up to 100,000
Head of group	Not applicable	Up to 50,000		Up to 50,000
Accountant	Not applicable	Up to 25,000		Up to 25,000

Financial Transaction	Signing checks and bank payment orders from public bank accounts			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Minister	Not applicable	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Undersecretary	Not applicable	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Assistant Undersecretary with another of the same level	Not applicable	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Assistant Undersecretary with director	Not applicable	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Assistant Undersecretary with head of section in the Payment & Collection Directorate	Not applicable	Not applicable	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable
Director with another of the same level	Not applicable	Not applicable	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable
Director with head of section in the Payment & Collection Directorate	Not applicable	Not applicable	Up to 500,000	Not applicable

Head of section in the Payment & Collection Directorate with another from same directorate and same level	Not applicable	Not applicable	Up to 25,000	Not applicable

Financial Transaction	Authorization of foreign payments			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Undersecretary	All amounts	Not applicable	According to the authority levels specified for authorization of payment from public bank accounts	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 500,000	Not applicable		Not applicable
Director	Up to 100,000	Not applicable		All amounts
Head of section	Up to 25,000	Up to 100,000		Up to 100,000
Head of group	Up to 1,000	Up to 50,000		Up to 50,000
Accountant	Not applicable	Up to 25,000		Up to 25,000

Financial Transaction	Approval request of commitment to pay advance payments			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Undersecretary	All amounts	Not applicable	All amounts	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable	Up to 1,000,000	Not applicable
Director	Up to 500,000	Not applicable	Up to 500,000	Not applicable

Authorization levels related to private bank accounts

.2.4.29 Authorization levels apply to authorize payments from private bank accounts, as shown in the following table:

Financial Transaction	Signing checks and bank payment orders from private bank accounts			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Minister	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Undersecretary	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Assistant undersecretary	Up to 10,000 *	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Director	Up to 10,000 *	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Head of section	Up to 10,000 *	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

(*) Checks must be signed jointly by two authorized persons as per the authority levels specified above.

Financial Transaction	Authorization of payment documents			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Assistant undersecretary	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Director	Up to 10,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Head of section	Up to 5,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Financial Transaction	Request to open a documentary credit			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Assistant undersecretary	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Director	Up to 10,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Financial Transaction	Authorization of revenue documents			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Director	All amounts	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Head of section	Up to 10,000	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Other journal entries

.2.4.30 Journal entries are authorized for financial adjustments not specified in this section, according to authority levels shown in the table below:

Financial Transaction	Authorization of journal entries			
Job level	Authority level (BD)			
	Government Authority		Ministry of Finance and National Economy	
	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS	Document Authorization	Approval in CFS
Head of section	All amounts	All amounts	All amounts	All amounts
Head of group	Up to 100,000	Up to 100,000	All amounts	All amounts
Accountant	Up to 50,000	Up to 50,000	All amounts	All amounts

.2.5 Preservation of documents and records

Control over financial documents and records

.2.5.1 The Financial Resources Directorates in government authorities is responsible for setting appropriate controls for internal control over financial documents and records, whether new or used, to prevent any irregularities or misuse.

Classification of records

.2.5.2 Governmental authorities must issue the decisions that specify the financial subjects that fall into each of the following level of classifications, according to the nature of the information and documents related to it:

A. (Strictly Confidential) it is the information and documents which the disclosure of contents will threaten the safety of the State or cause serious damage to its security or interests.

B. (Confidential) It is the information and documents which the disclosure of contents will cause to harm the security of the state or its interests.

C. (Prohibited / Limited) It is the information and documents which the disclosure of contents will cause to limited harm to the security of the state or its interests.

.2.5.3 With consideration the provisions of laws issued, information and state documents that do not fall within any of the classifications referred to in clause no. (2.5.2) are classified as “ordinary” information and documents, the employee must preserve them from tampering, loss or damage, and their content is not allowed to be disclosed for those not concerned.

.2.5.4 The documents referred to in clause no. (2.5.2) are considered protected, and government authorities must issue decisions that determine their classification and indexing, and how to preserve them to ensure their protection, integrity and confidentiality, the expiry period of their confidentiality status, and the procedures for preserving them after the finish of this status, in coordination with the Information and egovernment Authority.

.2.5.5 The information and documents referred to in this title are oral, written, printed, abridged, photographed, electronically stored or in any method or photos, films, drawings, maps or other from written recording methods, audio and visual that circulated by the state's authorities, institutions, bodies, various agencies and the public individuals.

.2.5.6 It is prohibited for any employee without a legitimate reason to:

A. Disclosing any information or protected documents if he had access to it or get it, acquired it, or came to his knowledge by virtue of his responsibility or position.

B. Taking out any information or protected documents from the government authorities that he works in, and is also prohibited printing, copying, photocopying, storing or keeping them outside that authority.

C. It is prohibited for any employee whose service has been terminated for any reason to disclose any information or documents obtained by him or came to his knowledge and the disclosure of them was prohibited in accordance with the provisions of this subsection.

Loss, mutilation or destruction of financial documents and records

.2.5.7 All financial documents or records that are lost or distorted whether during work or during their preservation, must be submitted to the Director of Human and Financial Resources or his equivalent in the concerned government authority to decide on conducting the necessary investigation to find out the causes of that, and to take the necessary precautions to prevent the use of lost documents or financial records.

Save documents

Preservation period

.2.5.8 Government authority must keep all financial documents and records with their full attachments for the purposes of control and auditing (for example, payment documents, invoices, purchase orders, delivery notes and any other documents related to the financial transaction must be attached to it), including the data stored electronically according to the following:

A. The preservation period shall not be less than two years starting from the beginning of the fiscal year which is the next of the year in which the work ended, and for a period of ten years for financial documents and records that entail financial obligations with others, and includes the following:

1. Revenue document

2. Revenue return request

3. Request for foreign payment

4. Request for non-deductible documentary credit

5. Billing record report

6. Request to amend/cancel of foreign payment

7. Purchase order

8. Letter of award

9. Contract execution order

10. Certificate of payment

11. Financial contracts of all types

12. Records of post transactions (receivables and debts)

13. The appendix of contract renewal or amendment

B. Financial documents and records related to any rights in dispute between the government and others shall be kept until the date of final settlement of these rights or the date of their ending by obsolescence in accordance with the provisions of the laws issued.

C. The period for preserving financial documents and records starts from the beginning of the fiscal year which is the next of the year in which the work of the financial documents or records ended. Regarding the contractual documents, including financial contracts of all types, the period of their preservation starts from the date of completion of the contractual obligations contained in the contract or contractual document, including Expiration of warranty and maintenance periods.

D. The necessary records for counting and following up the collection of the amounts due for post-collection transactions must be kept until these rights are finally settled.

Precautions for conservation

.2.5.9 Financial documents and records must be kept securely and in organized manner to ensure their protection and ease of reference when needed.

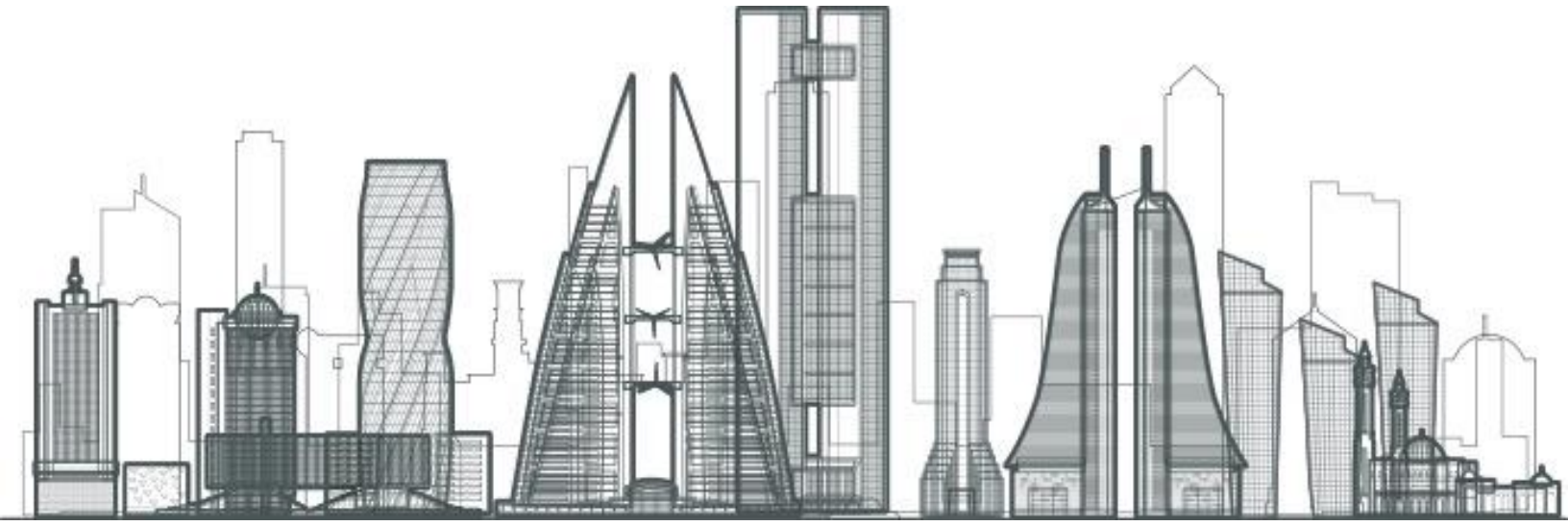
.2.5.10 Government authorities may photocopy financial documents and records with a microfilm device or a scanner after the expiry of the specified storage periods, according to their importance.

Destruction of financial documents and records

.2.5.11 It is allowed that financial documents and records be destroyed after the expiry of the periods of their preservation indicated in this section, provided that this is done in accordance with the procedures applied by the Documents and Records Directorate.

.2.5.12 The Documents and Records Directorate affiliated to the Minister of Cabinet Affairs is responsible for destroying the expired paper financial documents and records according to the preservation periods set forth in this section, provided that sending a copy of the list of financial documents and records that have been destroyed to the concerned government authority.

3. The Budget

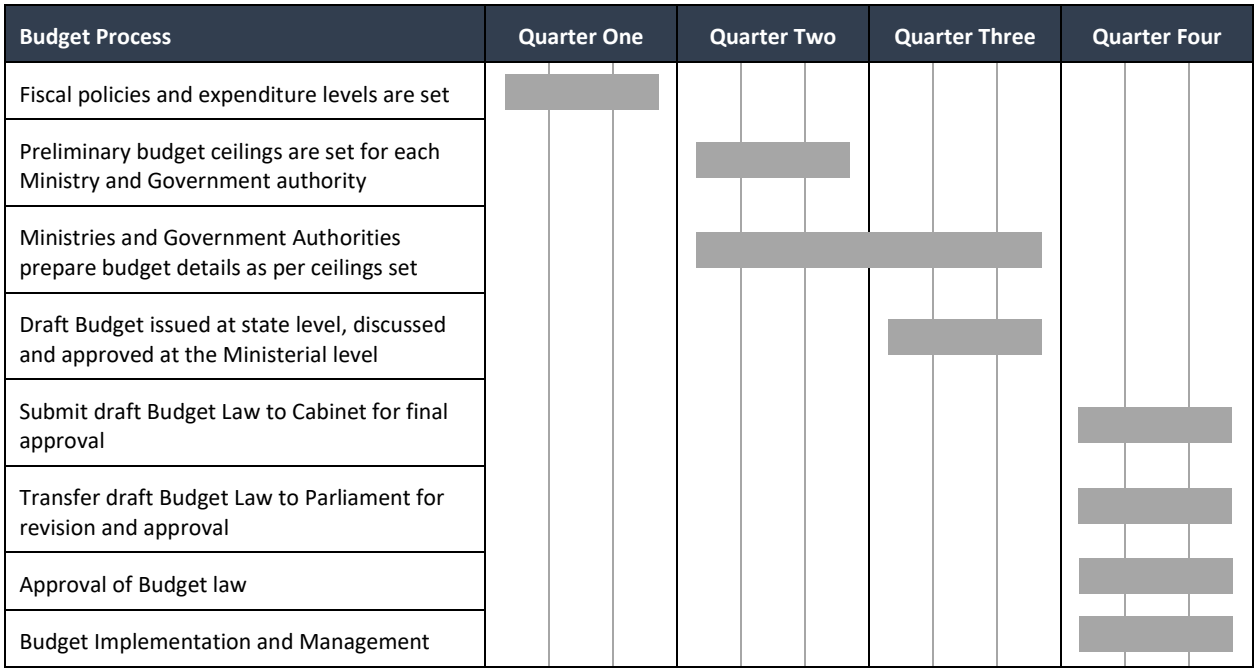


General description of the section		
The coverage	Provisions and procedures related to preparation, approval, implementation and the control of the public budget.	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**The Directorate**	**The responsibilities**
	Projects Directorate	Supervising the estimation and implementation process of projects budget.
	Public Revenue Policy Directorate	Supervising the estimation and implementation process of revenue budget.
	Budget Directorate	Supervising of the budget preparation process in general.

.3.1 Introduction and general provisions

.3.1.1 The Ministry of Finance and National Economy is responsible for preparing the state's public budget, and it is the primary instrument for financial planning and control over financial performance and government disbursement.

.3.1.2 The process of estimating and approving the budget passes through several stages, as follows:



.3.1.3 Budget estimates may be prepared for two fiscal years at most, provided that its duration is determined by the Cabinet based on the proposal of the Minister of Finance and National Economy, and each fiscal year for the state's public budget consists of twelve months starting on the first day of January and ending on the thirty-first of December of the year.

.3.1.4 The minister submits to the Cabinet - along with the draft budget - a report on the financial projections for the two years following the budget period, including aggregate financial data on revenue, expenditures, and expected deficit or surplus for each year, and estimates of the upper limit for borrowing and a statement of macroeconomic indicators.

Specifying budget goals and disbursement ceiling

.3.1.5 The Cabinet determines, upon the proposal of the Minister of Finance and National Economy, at least three months before the start of the financial period, the following matters:

A. The objectives of the fiscal policy, the general macroeconomic framework, the basis for preparing the public budget estimates, and the prospective financial risks.

B. The total public disbursement of the state for the next fiscal period through expected public revenue.

C. The criteria and principles by which public funds will be allocated to sectors, ministries and government authorities, in light of the priorities of the development strategy.

.3.1.6 Based on the Cabinet approval of the proposal of the Minister of Finance and National Economy regarding the public disbursement ceiling and budget expectations, the financial ceilings are determined for each government authority, and accordingly the Minister of Finance and National Economy issues a "budget preparation" circular containing detailed instructions on preparing the budget based on the ceiling set for each of them and the deadlines for submitting proposals for the budget distribution.

.3.2 Preparing budget estimates

Revenues estimation

.3.2.1 The government authorities prepare the initial estimates of revenues in accordance with the instructions issued by the Minister of Finance and National Economy, and inform the Ministry of Finance and National Economy of the estimates on the date specified, and if any party delays submitting its project for revenue estimates beyond the specified date, the Ministry itself - after notifying that authority - undertakes the estimation of that Revenues are based on the current year budget of that entity, taking into consideration all factors and circumstances that may have affected or may affect those estimates.

.3.2.2 The Ministry of Finance and National Economy studies the initial estimates of revenues prepared by government authorities and prepares final estimates of revenues.

.3.2.3 The government authorities shown in the following table are responsible for studying and preparing final estimates of government revenues, according to the type of revenue:

Type of Revenue	Budget items	Responsible authority/authorities
Oil revenue	410	The National Oil and Gas Authority in coordination with the Public Revenue Policy Directorate
Non-oil revenue	422, 423, 424, 430, 440, 450, 460, 470	The Public Revenue Policy Directorate is responsible for compiling the revenue estimates that will be included in the budget, based on the inputs received from government authorities, and those authorities must coordinate with this directorate to implement these requirements during the period of preparing the budget estimates.
Value-added tax and excise tax revenue	426, 425	The National Bureau for Revenue in coordination with the Public Revenue Policy Directorate

.3.2.4 The law approving the budget may not include any text that would create a new tax, increase an existing tax, amend an existing law, or avoid issuing a law in the matter of the constitution stipulating that it be regulated by law.

.3.2.5 Fees are imposed within the limits of the law, and the determination of their categories and percentages of increase or decrease thereof shall be by a decision of the competent minister after the approval of the Cabinet, unless the law stipulates otherwise, and the Cabinet may authorize the minister to determine the categories of fees and the rates of their increase or decrease.

Revenue allocation

3.2.6. State revenues are allocated in their entirety to cover public expenditures in their entirety, and it is not allowed to allocate any revenue from public revenues to cover a specific expenditure from public expenditures except by law, and it is not allowed to deduct a specific expenditure from a specific revenue, and no specific revenue from a specific expenditure except by law.

Distribution of expenditure estimates

3.2.7. Governmental authorities prepare estimates of their expenditures and submit them to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, together with the data and information necessary to justify each of the required appropriations of budget, on the date set by the ministry, and the estimates indicate the distribution of expenditures in accordance with the instructions issued by the Minister of Finance and National Economy.

.3.2.8 Disbursement estimates must be supported by documents, statistics, and explanatory notes justifying the required budget allocations, and the estimates must be consistent with the government's work program and strategic objectives.

.3.2.9 Government authorities must specify all expected contracts and obligations during the budget period, so that the necessary amounts are reserved for them.

.3.2.10 The calculation of the applicable value-added tax rate must be taken into consideration when preparing estimates for the budget for non-essential goods and services, in accordance with the law.

Disbursement plan

.3.2.11 Each government authority prepares a disbursement plan that includes its needs of goods and services for the next budget period, and is distributed according to the appropriate budget items, and after approval by the concerned authorities and the issuance of the state budget law, the disbursement must be committed according to what has been approved.

.3.2.12 The disbursement plan should include the following details as a minimum:

A. Type of disbursement (includes all financial obligations that have been committed and which have not been complied with)

B. Description of expenditures

C. Nature of expenditures (in the case of contracts, indicating the nature of the contract).

D. The term of the contract or financial obligations.

E. Names of potential suppliers, and in case of a valid or ongoing contract, the name of the current supplier must be specified.

F. Estimates of actual expenditures by item for the next budget period.

G. Any additional data determined by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.3.2.13 When estimating the budget for building maintenance expenditures, government authorities must do the following:

A. Prepare a short-term plan that includes an estimate of the maintenance expenditures of the planned buildings for a period of two years, and provide basic details about each building, its type and purpose (civil, administrative or other services) and the type of maintenance (building rehabilitation, prcaseive or comprehensive), according to the form specified in the annexes of this section.

B. Prepare a long-term plan that includes an estimate of the building maintenance expenditures planned for a period of five years, according to the form specified in the annexes of this section.

C. Allocate 85% of the maintenance budget for planned maintenance and 15% for emergency maintenance.

3.2.14. The building maintenance budget must be submitted to the Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning to express its observations on it 6 months before the next budget cycle, and in the case that it is approved by the mentioned ministry, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy will include it in the state budget.

Obligations for more than one period

3.2.15. In the case that a specific commitment or expenditure exceeds more than one financial period, government authorities must provide details, supported by justification of the required budget estimates over the commitment period.

.3.2.16 Contracts for any expenditures may be approved for a period exceeding one fiscal year, provided that the duration of these contracts and agreements does not exceed four years, and if the contract period exceeds the mentioned period, prior approval must be obtained from the Minister of Finance and National Economy.

Expenditures related to other government authorities

.3.2.17 If it becomes evident to a government authority, upon estimating its expenditures, that there are services within the competence of other government authorities, it must notify these authorities within a sufficient period so that those authorities can allocate the necessary funds in the upcoming budget estimates.

Special provisions for estimating the project budget

.3.2.18 The provisions of the recurrent expenditure budget preparation apply to the preparation of the project expenditure budget, subject to the specific provisions of the Projects Expenditure section.

.3.2.19 Government authorities must ensure that all project expenditures included in the budget do not exceed the spending ceiling set by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.3.2.20 All current and planned contracts and commitments for existing and ongoing projects must be within the approved project budget ceiling.

.3.2.21 Government authorities must submit all necessary and relevant information supported by sufficient and appropriate studies for project approval to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.3.2.22 It is not allowed to use the recurrent expenditures budget to be spent on projects, unless it is part of the project and its continuation depends on those expenditures, and subject to obtaining prior approval from the Projects Directorate.

.3.2.23 The submitted project budget should cover all project costs expected over the life of the project.

Delivery of budget estimates

.3.2.24 Each government authority prepares budget estimates for revenues, recurrent expenditures and project expenditures according to the instructions contained in the circular of budget preparation and the approved disbursement plan for the government authority, and submits them to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy within the specified dates.

3.2.25. In the case that any government authority fails to submit its revenue estimates on the specified date, the Public Revenue Policy Directorate estimates these revenues based on the current year's budget estimates, taking into consideration all factors and circumstances that have affected or may affect those estimates.

3.2.26. If a government authority delays in submitting its estimates of expenditures on the specified date, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, after notifying that government authority, estimates these expenditures on the basis of the current year budget of that government authority, taking into consideration the amendments that have been introduced during the year and other considerations of government authority.

3.2.27. The concerned directorates of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy review government authorities' proposals for distributions budget ceilings allocated to them, and government authorities are obligated to provide these directorates with the documents and data they need to carry out this task.

3.2.28. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy prepares a draft budget law that includes the budget estimates specified for each government authority, and the draft budget law is submitted to the Cabinet for approval. The approval of the draft budget law must be completed at a time allowed to be submitted to the Shura Council and Parliament, at least two months before the end of the current fiscal year for discussion and consideration in accordance with the provisions of the constitution.

Discussing and approving the budget

.3.2.29 In the case that there are any changes to the proposed budget ceilings during the discussion with the Councils of Shura and Parliament, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy reviews these changes and submits the amendments to the Cabinet which will submit it again to the Councils of Shura and Parliament.

.3.2.30 The state's public budget and the amendments made to its original appropriations of budget shall be issued by law.

.3.2.31 After the budget approval law is issued, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy informs government authorities of their final approved budgets, and instructions for their implementation.

.3.2.32 If the budget approval law is not issued before the start of the fiscal year, the previous budget shall be applied until its issuance. Revenues are collected and expenditures are spent at a rate of one over twelfth of the previous budget for each month, in accordance with applicable laws at the end of the mentioned year, and in accordance with the instructions of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy that issued in this regard.

.3.3 Budget implementation

General Provisions

.3.3.1 Government authorities should adhere by the instructions issued by the Minister of Finance and National Economy in regard of controls and procedures for implementing the budget after it is approved and issued in accordance with the law.

.3.3.2 Government authorities must implement their budget efficiently and effectively, and the concerned directorates of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy arrange periodic meetings with government authorities to monitor the performance of budget implementation and assess the levels of revenue collection, the extent of commitment to the specified spending levels, identify the risks associated with spending or exceeding the budget, and solve them early .

.3.3.3 Concerned government authorities must provide all necessary data and documents when discussing budget execution performance with the concerned directorates in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, specifically with regard to the following:

A. Appropriations of budget for actual spending on initiatives.

B. Revenue collection, level of performance, and any new proposed initiatives.

C. Performance of project expenditure budget execution.

D. Performance of recurrent expenditure budget execution, contracts and disbursement expectations.

E. Any other requirements requested by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

Execution of expenditure budget

.3.3.4 Government authorities must plan in advance for the purchase and obtain the required prior approvals from the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, the Tender Board, the Information and E-Government Authority, the Civil Service Bureau and other relevant government authorities.

.3.3.5 Governmental authorities are responsible for managing their budgets in a way that preserves the level of spending within the budget boundaries allocated to them, and government authorities' purchases are subject to control by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.3.3.6 Government authorities should review the budget allocations for expenditures and manage the relationship with suppliers so that disbursement is not implemented unless needed.

.3.3.7 The government authority must, before entering into any disbursement commitment, ensure that sufficient budget is available at the item level to cover that obligation according to the approved disbursement plan.

.3.3.8 Government authorities must include any change in the recurrent expenditure budget during the year in the disbursement plan after approval by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.3.3.9 Ministries and government authorities must obtain prior approval from the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for the availability of funds before expanding in existing programs or creating new programs or administrative units that entail additional financial burdens.

.3.3.10 It is not allowed for government authorities to conclude any contract or agreement or subscription in organizations, conferences and official participations, or to undertake any matter that entails loading the approved budget with additional financial burdens without referring to the Cabinet.

.3.3.11 It is considered as a violation of any excess of spending or committing of obligations during the execution of the approved budget, whatever its form, such as memoranda of understanding, contracts, purchase requests, or negotiation, which lead to additional financial implications for the approved budget, and the payments are only settled based on a decision issued by the Cabinet after the concerned government authority explains and clarifies the justifications for that.

.3.3.12 Government authorities must initiate and register their financial obligations in the Central Financial System in a timely manner, prior to the monthly closing dates for the financial periods to which these expenditures relate.

.3.3.13 Government authorities must inform the Ministry of Finance and National Economy of any surpluses in the recurrent expenditures budget on the dates specified by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, and they may not use those surpluses to cover expenditures not previously approved in the budget.

.3.3.14 Purchase orders are not posted to the next fiscal year except for expenditures that were actually received before the end of the fiscal year.

Building Maintenance

.3.3.15 All government authorities must provide the Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning with a quarterly report on:

A. Actual maintenance expenditures against appropriations of budget.

B. Accomplished maintenance expenditures according to the disbursement plan.

C. The percentage of actual maintenance expenditures included and not included in the disbursement plan from the total budget allocated for maintenance.

D. Justifications for not starting in / or completing the maintenance works listed in the disbursement plan.

.3.3.16 The Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning submits its recommendations on the performance of government authorities with regard to maintenance expenditures, to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for review as part of its continuous performance monitoring.

Execution of revenue budget

.3.3.17 Government authorities must prepare quarterly reports on their level of performance on revenue collection, provided that they include, as a minimum, the following:

A. A comparison between the estimated revenues in the public budget and the revenues collected according to each of the items, explaining the reasons for the increase or deficit, in addition to the procedures that will be taken by the government authority in the case of a deficit in the actual revenues comparing with the estimated revenue.

B. Appropriate justification for any increase or decrease in the revenues mentioned in compared to the budget and actual revenues for the same quarter of the previous year.

C. A breakdown of the overdue revenues, including the value of the accumulated overdue amounts, an indication of the debtor's name, and the chronological age of these amounts.

D. Justifications for not collecting the due revenues.

E. Procedures and measures taken by the government authority in order to collect the overdue debts and reduce the number of days due and reduce its balances.

F. Any other information or clarifications specified by the Public Revenue Policy Directorate.

These reports are submitted to the Office of the Assistant Undersecretary for Finance and Budget Policies, according to the following schedule:

A. The data for the first quarter by April of each fiscal year.

B. The data for the second quarter by July of each fiscal year.

C. The data for the third quarter by October of each fiscal year.

D. The data for the last quarter by January of each fiscal year.

Transfer and budget adjustment

.3.3.18 The concerned Directorates in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy are responsible for deciding on transfer requests in the budget, according to the competence of each Directorate, as shown below:

A. The Public Revenue Policy Directorate reviews transfer requests in the revenue budget.

B. The Projects Directorate reviews the transfer requests in the projects budget.

C. The Budget Directorate reviews the transfer requests in the recurrent expenditure budget.

.3.3.19 The concerned government authorities must update the disbursement plan with the transfers made in the budget.

.3.3.20 When submitting a request to approve a transfer in the budget, government authorities must observe the following:

A. All requests for approval of budget transfers are supported by adequate justification.

B. Obtaining all prior approvals from the concerned government authorities before submitting the request to approve the transfer in the budget.

C. Evaluate the impact of the transfer on the budget before submitting the request.

Additional budget request

.3.3.21 Authorities may apply for an additional budget in the case that there are necessary considerations that require this, and that these considerations are new and were not possible to predict during the stages of preparing the budget estimates, and that they have an urgent case with which the request cannot be postponed to a subsequent budget cycle, and after exhaustion All other possible options to provide the required budget such as:

A. Rescheduling disbursement priorities and postponing uncommitted expenditures to another period.

B. Transfer and redistribution of budget allocations among recurrent expenditures sections (Sections 2 to 7).

C. Redistribute the budget between projects in line with the public budget law and the control provisions on project expenditures stipulated in this manual and what is decided by the Projects Directorate.

D. Negotiate with contracted suppliers to reduce the prices of goods and services within the committed contracts and provide sufficient evidence to prove this to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

E. Review the current scope of existing contracts to reduce expenditures.

.3.3.22 The requests to open additional budget must be submitted six months after the beginning of the fiscal year and at least three months before its end.

.3.3.23 The request to open additional budget is submitted by a minister or chairman of the government authority to the ministry within sufficient time to allow the completion of the necessary legal procedures to approve the budget and benefit from it before the end of the budget period, provided that the request includes the following:

A. An explanation of the emerging justifications and considerations that require the opening of the additional budget.

B. A statement of the impact of the required additional budget on the implementation of government authority's programs or its strategic plans.

C. The required amount of additional budget, disbursement plan, including cash flow data.

D. Justifications for not including the request within the original budget estimates, justifications for the inability to absorb the required additional appropriation from the approved budget, or for postponing the request to the next budget period.

E. The item (s) to which the additional budgets will be added.

F. A copy of the law or cabinet decision, if the purpose of requesting additional budget is to implement the requirements of any laws or decisions of the cabinet.

G. An explanation of the impacts in case not to approve to open the additional appropriation within the current budget period.

H. Prior approvals required from other government authorities (for example, the Civil Service Bureau for expenditures related to Chapter 1).

I. The effect of opening additional budget for projects on the financial costs of recurrent expenditures, such as manpower expenditures and the rest of the other budget sections.

J. The implications of manpower costs on other budget sections, or vice versa, with identifying costs in both cases.

K. The impact on government revenues, with determination of impact type and the amount and period of impact.

.3.3.24 Based on the results of the evaluation and study related to the request for approval to open the additional budget, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy decides the final amount of the additional budget that will be submitted to the relevant government authority, and therefore the final amount that is approved may differ from the amount required by the concerned government authority.

.3.3.25 In the case that the request for opening the additional budget is approved, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy prepares the draft law for opening the additional budget and submits it to the Cabinet for approval and to complete the legal and legislative procedures to issue the necessary legal tools.

.3.3.26 The additional budget may not be disbursed except on the aspects for which it was allocated.

.3.3.27 In the case that the additional budget is approved, the concerned government authority shall:

A. Distribute the budget to the relevant chapters, sections and items, and update the disbursement plan accordingly.

B. Update the budget data in the Central Financial System, and if this appropriation concerns recurrent expenditures, the updated disbursement plan must be approved by the budget directorate before entering the additional budget data in the Central Financial System.

Budget rotation

.3.3.28 The work shall be void with any budget that has not been disbursed or is not committed during the fiscal year in which it was linked to disbursement, provided that the Minister of Finance and National Economy may approve the rotation of the

remaining funds or part of them for the next fiscal year if the public interest so requires.

.3.3.29 The appropriations of budget may be rotated to the next fiscal year to finance and pay the following:

A. The future financial obligations resulting from financial transactions, the government authority initiated contracting procedures and was unable to complete them until the end of the fiscal year.

B. The projects, programs, transactions, or activities whose implementation is postponed to a next fiscal year or which have not been completed until the end of the fiscal year.

C. Any other expenditures or obligations required by the public interest.

.3.3.30 The minister is allowed, upon a request from the government authority to approve the rotation of the remaining appropriations of budget or part of it to a next fiscal year, provided that the following matters are fulfilled:

A. The government authority has achieved savings in its appropriations of budget for the current year that are not less than the entire appropriations of budget required to be rotated.

B. The lack of sufficient appropriations in the budget of the government authority for the next fiscal year to implement the disbursement plan for which the appropriations of budget were requested to be rotated.

C. The amount of appropriations of budget required to be rotated should not be less than BD 3000.

.3.3.31 Is not allowed to rotate the recurrent expenditures appropriations of budget for more than one fiscal year, and this is allowed for project expenditures appropriations of budget, as required by the financial obligations to implement these projects.

.3.3.32 It is not allowed for the government authority to exploit the appropriations of budget that have been approved to be rotated in other than the aspects of spending in which the rotation was approved, nor the commitment or disbursement of those appropriations of budget except after the Ministry of Finance and National Economy adds them to the budget for the next fiscal year within the Central Financial System.

.3.3.33 The Ministry of Finance and National Economy may cancel or reduce the appropriations of budget that have been rotated if it appears necessary to do so during the next fiscal year.

.3.3.34 The disbursement of rotated appropriations of budget is recorded as an expenditure in the fiscal year in which the disbursement is made.

.3.3.35 In the case that a project budget rotation is requested, the government authority must attach a project rotation form with the request of rotation.

.3.3.36 The budget rotation request must include the specific amount to be rotated, the purpose of the rotation, and an explanation of the justification for the rotation.

.3.3.37 In case the budget rotation is approved, the concerned government authority will update the disbursement plan according to the adjustments made in the budget.

.3.4 **Annexures**

Annexure 1: Components of the state's public budget

.3.4.1 The budget consists of three main categories, which are as follows:

A. **Revenues**, are classified within seven chapters as follows:

1. Chapter One: Oil and Gas
2. Chapter Two: Taxes and Fees
3. Chapter Three: Goods and Services
4. Chapter Four: Government Investments and Properties
5. Chapter Five: Subsidies
6. Chapter Six: Sales of Capital Assets
7. Chapter Seven: Fines and Miscellaneous Revenue (Other)

B. **Recurrent expenditures**, are classified within seven chapters as follows:

1. Chapter One: Manpower
2. Chapter Two: Services
3. Chapter Three: Consumer Goods
4. Chapter Four: Capital Goods
5. Chapter Five: Maintenance
6. Chapter Six: Transfer Expenditures
7. Chapter Seven: Grants, subsidies and loan interest

C. **Projects expenditures.**

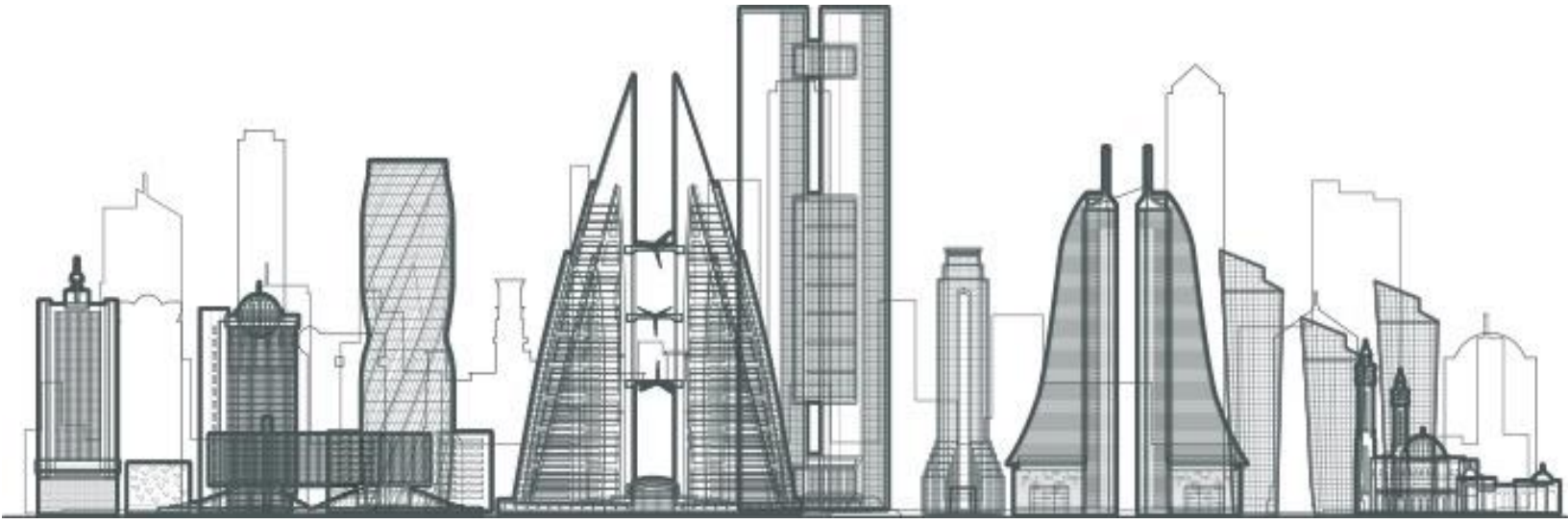
Annexure 2: Building Maintenance Plan [2 years]

No.	Project Description	Total Planned Project Amount	Planned Cash flow		Priority
			1st Year Amount	2nd Year Amount	
Planned Project					
1					
2					
Total planned Amount (85% of Total Budget Amount)					
Un Planned Project					
1	Not required to fill				
2					
Total Un planned Amount (15% of Total Budget Amount)			0	0	
Total Budget Amount			0	0	

Annexure 3: Building Maintenance Plan [5 years]

No.	Building Name	Location	Year 1				Year 2				Year 3				Year 4				Year 5				Remarks
			General Maintenance Works	Preventive Maintenance	Waterproofing system	Landscaping Maintenance	General Maintenance Works	Preventive Maintenance	Waterproofing system	Landscaping Maintenance	General Maintenance Works	Preventive Maintenance	Waterproofing system	Landscaping Maintenance	General Maintenance Works	Preventive Maintenance	Waterproofing system	Landscaping Maintenance	General Maintenance Works	Preventive Maintenance	Waterproofing system	Landscaping Maintenance	
1																							
2																							
3																							
4																							
5																							
A	Total Planned Amount (85% of Total Budget Amount)		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
						-				-				-				-				-	
B	Total Un Planned Amount (15% of Total Budget Amount)																						
A+B	Total Budget Amount					-				-				-				-				-	

4. The Revenue



General description of the section		
The coverage	The controls that regulate proposing new services and / or reviewing the current list of services by government authorities, defines methodologies for determining prices for government services fees, and sets out the policies related to the management and collection of amounts owed to government authorities.	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**The Directorate**	**The responsibilities**
	Public Revenue Policy Directorate	Setting the policies related to developing and collecting public revenues and following up their implementation and compliance by government authorities.
	Financing Operations Directorate	Supervising the bank accounts designated for revenue, and determining and managing the channels of government revenue collection.

.4.1 **Revenue development initiatives**

.4.1.1 Government authorities should coordinate with the Public Revenue Policy Directorate to implement more effective and efficient initiatives in terms of pricing services and generating revenues, or to launch new services or review existing services provided.

.4.1.2 In the case that there is a proposal with the government authority to implement a revenue development initiative, the authority shall do the following:

1. Submit a request for approval to implement the initiative by filling out and sending form "Proposal submission of revenue development" no. (RPD-INTV-01) to the Public Revenue Policy Directorate.

2. Determine an official point of contact for communication with the parties concerned with studying revenue development initiatives.

3. Submit an internal preliminary study on the proposed initiative, as requested by the Public Revenue Policy Directorate.

4. Prepare to discuss any aspects related to the proposed initiatives, including the impact and implementation process, with relevant parties if necessary.

5. After completing the study of the request by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, the government authority submits the proposal to the Ministerial Committee, to obtain its directives related to the implementation of the initiative.

6. Based on the approval of the Ministerial Committee, government authorities implement the initiative, taking into consideration the appropriate legal instrument.

7. Take the necessary measures to update the accounts and make the necessary adjustments in the budget when needed.

.4.2 **Pricing of government services**

.4.2.1 Government authorities must coordinate with the Public Revenue Policy Directorate to price, re-price or cancel the services fees they provide.

.4.2.2 Government authorities are obligated to follow the cost recovery methodology specified in this subsection when pricing government service fees whenever

possible, and other more effective and efficient methodologies may be followed whenever the nature and circumstances of imposing the fee so require.

.4.2.3 Government authorities are responsible for regularly reviewing the cost of the services provided, and government authorities can coordinate with the Ministry of Finance and National Economy in conducting a cost analysis when they do not have the expertise or sufficient tools to do so.

.4.2.4 When submitting a request to study the pricing or re-pricing of services, government authorities must provide the Ministry of Finance and National Economy with the following information (as a minimum) to estimate service costs:

A. Name of the service.

B. The number of times the actual service was provided during a period of one to three financial years.

C. Service price (in Bahraini Dinars).

D. Revenue received from providing the service during a period of one to three fiscal years.

E. Name of the directorate responsible for providing the service and its budget center number.

F. The number of employees directly involved in providing the service (for example: technical personnel).

.4.2.5 Upon approval by the concerned authorities of the government service pricing proposal, the concerned government authority must establish a team that includes representatives from the Human and Financial Resources Directorate and the relevant directorates which provide the service to act as the main point of contact concerned with providing the required information related to the service.

Methodologies of government services pricing

Pricing "based on cost"

.4.2.6 Pricing is done "based on cost" by determining the value of the fees after taking into consideration the costs of the service provided, which include all direct and indirect operational costs, with the aim of evaluating all the resources used in providing services and imposing the appropriate value.

.4.2.7 When determining the value of the fee “based on cost” the following main aspects should be taken into consideration:

A. Determine the costs of producing the service provided.

B. Determine the appropriate methodology for imposing a fee, according to the nature of the service provided and the group benefiting from it, and these methodologies are summarized as follows:

C. **Additional cost (+):** The imposed price is higher than the service cost, and this methodology is used to limit or prevent some behaviours, for example: imposing a high fee for issuing a driver's license card instead of a lost one, while the issuance fee is lower than that in order to encourage the preservation of the original card.

D. **Cost recovery (=):** The price charged equals the cost of the service, and this methodology aims to fully or partially recover the actual cost of providing the service.

E. **Cost subsidy (-):** The price charged is less than the service cost. This methodology is used to help or encourage the consumption of a specific service or support the needs of society and groups in need.

.4.2.8 Determine the individuals, sectors and entities that will be subject to the fees, in order to avoid placing financial burdens on some individuals and agencies and to ensure the issuance of appropriate laws and regulations, which in turn will maximize the efficiency of fee collection.

.4.2.9 Determine the value of the service fee based on a certain percentage of the actual cost.

.4.2.10 To implement the cost recovery policy effectively and efficiently, the government authority must observe the necessary measures, which are summarized as follows:

A. **Appropriateness:** The methodology applied must be consistent with the objectives of other policies, so that it is compatible and supplementary to the final results that the concerned government authority seeks to achieve. Example: A certain methodology should not lead to additional costs for essential services such as electricity and water in a way that limits the benefit of the largest segment of society.

B. **Efficiency:** The cost recovery policy requires setting fees to recover the lowest amount of the cost of providing a particular service at the required quality level, so that the quality is not affected by the refunded amount.

C. **Follow-up and review:** This process contributes to ensure that the methodology chosen remains most appropriate for the costs related to the service. This is done as follows:

D. Review and follow-up on a regular basis in order to keep pace with price inflation and increase in expenditures, etc.

F. Review the cost recovery methodology, to ensure that there are no additional hidden subsidies that may affect the objective of applying the cost recovery methodology that has been applied.

F. Establishing a robust mechanism for collecting fees, in order to ensure the success of the applied policy.

Pricing “based on international comparisons”

.4.2.11 Pricing is made "based on international comparisons” by determining the value of fees based on a comparison of service prices with what is applied in other countries."

.4.2.12 When using the government services pricing methodology “based on international comparisons”:

A. Take into consideration the following main factors:

1. Laws and regulations in force in the Kingdom of Bahrain.

2. The economic composition and size.

3. Social aspects.

4. Geographical size and environment.

5. Regional competitiveness.

B. Determine the following:

1. The most appropriate and relevant countries in the selected criteria for preparing international comparisons with them.

2. Determine and analyse how the service will be provided.

3. The price of the service provided and the beneficiary groups, in addition to the exemptions provided by the selected countries for comparison.

Pricing "based on competition in the market"

.4.2.13 Pricing is "based on competition in the market" by setting the amount according to what competitors in the private sector charge for the same service provided.

.4.2.14 The "market competition pricing" mechanism is used to price the government services that face direct competition in local open markets, (eg, mail services pricing, radio and television advertising services, medical services).

.4.2.15 When applying the “market competition” pricing mechanism, the following key aspects must be taken into consideration:

A. Determine the beneficiaries in the market with which service providers compete.

B. Identify companies in the market in providing these services.

C. Determine the current rate of the service provided.

D. Determine a value that corresponds to the current rate.

Pricing "according to specific time periods"

.4.2.16 Pricing is done "according to specific time periods" by setting fees for government services according to the time or time in which the service is provided. It aims to organize the service request at a specific time and provide it in a better way.

.4.2.17 The pricing methodology is used "according to specific time periods" to regulate the use of the service and provide the opportunity for the largest number of beneficiaries of the service, especially at peak times, for example: setting special fees for parking meters during peak times in some areas, and it is also used to give preference in providing the service to those who are ready to pay a higher price for the service in exchange for providing it at a faster than usual time (express service).

.4.2.18 When applying the "time-bound" pricing methodology, consideration must be given to identifying the following main issues:

A. The peak times the service is consumed.

B. Sites providing the service and identifying the beneficiaries of it.

C. Appropriate value.

Procedures for approving government services pricing

.4.2.19 The following procedures are followed to approve the pricing of government services:

A. The government authority submits a formal request regarding approval of government service pricing (it is preferred to use form "Determining the Cost of Providing Government Services" no. (RPD-COST-01) to the Public Revenue Policy Directorate, and clarify the following:

1. The services required to be priced and validated for the appropriate cost.

2. Draw a process flow chart for services and identify the relevant cost components.

B. After determining the costs of providing the service, the government authority submits a request to approve the implementation of the proposal to the competent authorities, based on the directives of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

C. After approval of the proposal, the government authority completes the implementation procedures using the appropriate legal tool.

D. Appropriate adjustments are made in the government authority's budget based on the costs and revenues involved in implementing the proposal.

.4.3 Revenue collection

General Provisions

.4.3.1 Government authorities must establish an internal system to control the collection of government funds, taking into consideration the following:

A. It includes all matters related to organizing government revenue collection procedures, and appropriate control over the financial, accounting and administrative aspects.

B. Corresponds to the nature and volume of government revenues that it collects.

C. Compatible with laws and regulations issued related to collection of government revenues.

D. Establish an effective mechanism to ensure the collection of all due amounts.

.4.3.2 Government authorities must ensure that the funds collected are legally due and that the financial operations related to the collection and supply of due revenues comply with the laws and regulations issued.

.4.3.3 The revenue transaction may not be completed except after the beneficiary has paid the full determined amount to complete the required transaction, with the exception of transactions that deal on credit according to the terms and conditions specified by this section.

.4.3.4 Government authorities may collect revenues for authorized purposes only (either by law, cabinet decision, or any other legal instrument such as memoranda of understanding in case of inter-ministerial collection).

.4.3.5 Clients are charged the approved and issued unit price based on legal channels only (based on Cabinet decision or any other legal channels).

.4.3.6 Discounts can be granted to clients on competitive products, but after the coordination with Public Revenue Policy Directorate, and approval of the minister (or equivalent) in the government authority, and these discounts are provided for the purpose of promoting the goods and / or services of the government authority, and when the discount is approved, the Public Revenue Policy Directorate must be notified of that.

4.3.7. Before providing the service, government authorities must make sure that the full amount is due according to the invoice or quotation before delivering goods and / or services to the client, with the exception of transactions in which the service is paid later and / or the client is accepted to be a creditor client.

.4.3.8 Revenue amounts are collected from clients in Bahraini dinars, unless otherwise specified and approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

Methods of revenue collection

.4.3.9 Government authorities must obtain the approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy before adopting any methods of revenue collection.

.4.3.10 The Payments and Collection Directorate is responsible for coordinating with banking institutions to provide methods of electronic collection or through financial cards or through any other appropriate methods, and government authorities are not allowed to request these services directly from banking institutions.

.4.3.11 The Payments and Collection Directorate pays the percentage of commission that banks charge on collecting revenues on behalf of government authorities in accordance with the agreed rates, provided that it is calculated as an expenditure separately within an item specified for this purpose in the public budget for recurrent expenditures.

Collection by check

4.3.12 All checks due to the government authority must be issued in its name and underlined with the word "for the beneficiary's account only".

.4.3.13 The receipt must include the data of the check received, and the receipt is issued under the name of the transaction owner, regardless of whether the check was drawn from his account or from the account of a person or another party, provided that the name of the account on which the check was drawn is also recorded on the receipt in case it is different than the name of the transaction owner.

.4.3.14 In collecting government funds, checks whose value is less than thirty dinars or less may not be accepted, and the Payments and Collection Directorate may coordinate with the government authority to amend this limit in line with the nature of its financial transactions.

.4.3.15 Concerned government authorities may not accept checks whose face value exceeds the amount due to them.

4.3.16. Government authorities must ensure that the following details related to checks are correct before issuing a receipt:

A. Match the check value in words and numbers with the due amount.

B. The check does not expire (the check date does not exceed 6 months).

C. The presence of the drawer's signature on the check and any amendment, addition or cancellation in it.

D. The name of the beneficiary government authority.

.4.3.17 Under no circumstances may the government authority circulate a check drawn for its order to endorse.

.4.3.18 It is not permissible for the government authority to accept post-dated checks except in exceptional cases that are needed for the work, and subject to obtaining prior approval from the Payments and Collection Directorate for that.

Returned checks

.4.3.19 The government authority must not accept the checks of the client whose checks have been returned more than once due to lack of balance, unless they are approved by the drawee bank (such as an administrative check).

.4.3.20 The government authority must record the details of the returned checks in form no. (802).

.4.3.21 The government authority must notify the owner of the returned check for lack of balance by paying its value in cash or by a certified check within one week from the date of returning the check.

.4.3.22 Government authorities must inform the Payments and Collection Directorate of details of the returned checks, in order to adjust the recorded revenues.

Electronic collection

.4.3.23 Government authorities must use electronic methods of payment to collect public revenues, and it is not permissible to use cash payment methods.

.4.3.24 Government authorities must adhere to the directives of Information and eGovernment Authority regarding collecting money through electronic channels.

Collection through financial cards (point of sale devices) and self-payment machines

.4.3.25 Government authorities must keep a record that includes the data of the electronic devices, their locations, and their authorized use.

.4.3.26 A monthly statement must be prepared of the funds collected from each type of cards separately and with the funds collected through the self-payment machines and should be sent with the settlement statement (if any) to the Payments and Collection Directorate.

Internet collection

.4.3.27 The government authority may collect government funds via the internet whenever it has systems, devices, and qualified personnel to manage transactions that take place through its website.

.4.3.28 Government authorities that collect funds through Internet channels must do the following:

A. Establishing appropriate procedures to ensure the security and integrity of transactions that take place over the Internet.

B. Use appropriate protection systems for clients credit card data, government records and databases from hacking by unauthorized parties.

C. The website should be embedded with terms of dealing which will be obligated by the other party in case agrees to deal with it.

D. Providing channels to help clients solve any problems they may encounter while using the site, or to inquire about any information.

E. Track and monitor website performance and user satisfaction through specified metrics to ensure proper use, client protection, and not affected transactions.

F. Issuing periodic reports to ensure the validity and reliability of transactions completed via Internet channels.

G. Adhere with applicable regulations regarding e-commerce and related transactions (such as data protection law etc.).

H. Setting appropriate rules and procedures to ensure the confidentiality and security for the transactions of the parties dealing with the government authority through the website.

Collection through direct deduction

4.3.29 Government authorities may collect their revenues from clients through direct deduction from their bank accounts, based on their approval.

.4.3.30 In all cases, the deducted amount must be equal to the invoice issued to the client for the good / service provided to him.

.4.3.31 Invoices should be sent and available to clients in a timely manner, along with all necessary details.

.4.3.32 The government authority shall send invoices or notices of the amounts due on regular periodic dates or any other specified periods, such as monthly bills or periodic renewal notices of licenses.

.4.3.33 Government authorities must ensure that the bank has delivered all the details related to direct deduction instructions, such as the deduction order number, the client's bank account number, the required deduction amount, the client's account number with the government authority and the invoice number.

.4.3.34 The amount of the direct deduction order issued by the government authority should be limited to the amount agreed upon with the client, and it must not include any other amounts, even if these amounts are owed to the government authority by the client.

.4.3.35 Government authorities must obtain from the banks a report that includes details of all the amounts deducted and transferred to their accounts, and details of the deducted orders that were rejected for any reason, such as: insufficient balance or cancellation of the deducted order by the client, and these reports are used to update clients' records and match their data with bank account statements to ensure the correctness of the amounts transferred to the accounts.

Collecting revenues on behalf of other government authorities

.4.3.36 Government authorities may coordinate with government or non-government authorities to collect revenues on their behalf, after prior coordination with the Payments and Collection Directorate.

.4.3.37 In the case that a government authority collects revenues on behalf of another government authority, a memorandum of understanding must be made between the two parties to regulate the terms and procedures for collection, and the draft of the memorandum must be reviewed and its terms approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and then approved by the minister or equivalent in the concerned government authorities.

.4.3.38 The government authority may entrust another government authority to collect its revenues on its behalf, and in this case, the government authority which will collect the revenues on behalf the other one shall undertake the following:

A. A memorandum of understanding should be done with the beneficiary government authority and include all the terms and details of the agreement and the obligations of the two parties, provided that the draft of the memorandum is presented to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for approval of its terms before being signed by the concerned parties.

B. Receiving and depositing the collected revenues on behalf of the beneficiary government authority in the bank account that is agreed upon with the Payments and Collection Directorate.

C. Notifying the beneficiary government authority with the revenue data received on its behalf on a monthly basis at least.

D. Follow-up the deferred revenues which are owed to the beneficiary government authority.

.4.3.39 The beneficiary government authority is responsible for recording the revenues collected for it by another government authority, making adjustments and passing the relevant journal entries.

Revenue collected in foreign currencies

.4.3.40 The government authority that deals with external entities and collects its revenues from that transactions locally must do the following:

A. Deposit all funds collected in foreign currency into the bank account determined by the Payments and Collection Directorate.

B. Issuing invoices in Bahraini dinars and their equivalent in US dollars or any foreign currency to be agreed upon with the Payments and Collection Directorate.

C. Record revenues in Bahraini dinars according to the exchange rate determined by the Payments and Collection Directorate.

D. Collecting the revenues due to it in one of the following ways:

E. The client opens an irrevocable documentary credit in favor of the relevant government authority through a local bank.

F. The approved bank guarantee must be issued by a local bank in favor of the relevant government authority.

G. Any other method to ensure that the government authority meets its due revenues.

Receipts

.4.3.41 Government authorities must issue an official receipt for the amounts received for each transaction, regardless of the value, the method of receipt, and the channel through which the funds were received.

.4.3.42 All government revenues receipts must be issued in Bahraini dinars, unless otherwise approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.4.3.43 The following data must be documented as a minimum upon receipt of the revenues due to the government authority:

A. A non-duplicate reference number for the transaction or balance.

B. The date the payment was received.

C. The offered service.

D. Details of the person who is given the amount.

e. Data of the employee who received the amount.

F. Details related to value-added tax.

G. The name of the government authority that holds the entitlement.

.4.3.44 In the cases where the revenues are of low values and their transactions are multiple, the government authority must coordinate with the Payments and Collection Directorate to determine the appropriate system for controlling this type of revenues.

.4.3.45 In the case of a manual receipt system, the followings apply:

A. Appointing an accountant (or equivalent) to be responsible for filing receipts.

B. Receipts are numbered sequentially and stored in a secure location.

C. Provide new receipts to meet daily requirements as needed.

D. Keep all copies of issued receipts including cancelled ones, in sequential order, in a safe place.

E. When an official receipt is cancelled, all its copies will be marked (cancelled).

Revenue recording

.4.3.46 The government authority shall coordinate with the Payments and Collection Directorate to determine the appropriate mechanism for entering and recording revenues in the Central Financial System, either by entering and recording revenue directly in the system, or by preparing form “Revenue Voucher” no. (601) and sending it with the bank's notification to the Payments and Collection Directorate to enter it on behalf of the government authority.

.4.3.47 After ensuring that the matching bank statements with receipts and receipts of deposit in the bank (for cash) amounts, the government authority enters revenue in the Central Financial System directly or through coordination with Payments and Collection Directorate, according to the agreed arrangement with the concerned directorate.

.4.3.48 Revenue recording must be taken according to the approved classification of the public budget.

.4.3.49 The amounts of trusts, guarantees and conditional donations received are not recorded as revenue, but are recorded under a separate commitment account in the general ledger system in coordination with the Payments and Collection Directorate.

.4.3.50 The principle of separation of duties should always be applied with regard to managing government funds collection, and this includes separating the authority to collect funds from the authority to record the transaction in the Central Financial System.

Matching and making adjustments

.4.3.51 Taking into consideration the separation of duties, the government authority reviews sales operations and matches sales lists, balances and reports regularly to ensure the correctness of sales amounts, operations and records, and in particular the following must be done:

A. Matching received amounts or debit balances from clients' accounts with sales reports issued by sales devices and systems on a daily basis.

B. Matching the bank statement with receipts balances, or deposit receipts in the bank for monthly cash amounts.

C. Matching the revenues balance in the general ledger account in the Central Financial System with the actual monthly revenues.

D. Correcting and settling any discrepancies (if any), preparing a conformity statement, and notifying the Financial Systems Development Directorate of the adjustments required to correct the revenues.

E. Providing the Payments and Collection Directorate with statements of reconciliation between the bank statement and the revenues records.

Revenue return

.4.3.52 The amounts collected in excess are refunded to clients by entering the invoice details in the Central Financial System by the government authority without entering the accounting tab. Then the Payments and Collection Directorate completes the tabulation entry procedures and passes the payment to the beneficiary.

.4.3.53 The government authority may not return the fees of issued licenses even if the license is not used or utilized by the client.

.4.3.54 In the case of an error in collecting or recording revenues, they must be returned after verifying the transaction, the completeness and integrity of the documents, and the availability of justifications for the return.

.4.3.55 The following procedures are applied in case of returning funds to clients:

A. Receive the receipt from the client and mark the revenue transaction documents, and all copies of the receipt with the word "cancelled".

B. Return the collected revenue to the client, save the revenue transaction documents in a file designated for this purpose, and save all copies of the cancelled receipt in the receipt book.

Credit dealing

.4.3.56 Government authorities must obtain the approval of the Public Revenue Policy Directorate before approving the credit dealing in the collection of government revenues.

.4.3.57 Authorities dealing with credit in collecting their service fees must do the following:

A. Determine conditions for evaluating and granting credit to clients to ensure accuracy in selecting clients.

B. Maintaining and updating a record of all credit clients, including a special account for each client dealt with.

C. The client agrees to a contract that specifies the credit arrangements and terms.

D. Issuing a credit invoice for each transaction.

E. Sending a monthly account statement to credit clients that includes all the monthly transactions data, whether his balance is debit or credit at the end of each month, whenever this requires.

F. Obtaining the necessary guarantees to receive the amounts due to them on due dates, such as obtaining a bank guarantee or cash insurance from clients whenever possible.

G. Maintain a record of clients, including an account for each client that is dealt with, and take appropriate procedures to follow up the collection.

H. Take all necessary procedures to improve the procedures for collecting its revenues, and to reduce the accumulated amounts of uncollected.

.4.3.58 Government authorities must follow the procedures specified in the table below as a minimum to deal with the amounts due to them, according to the class and period of debt:

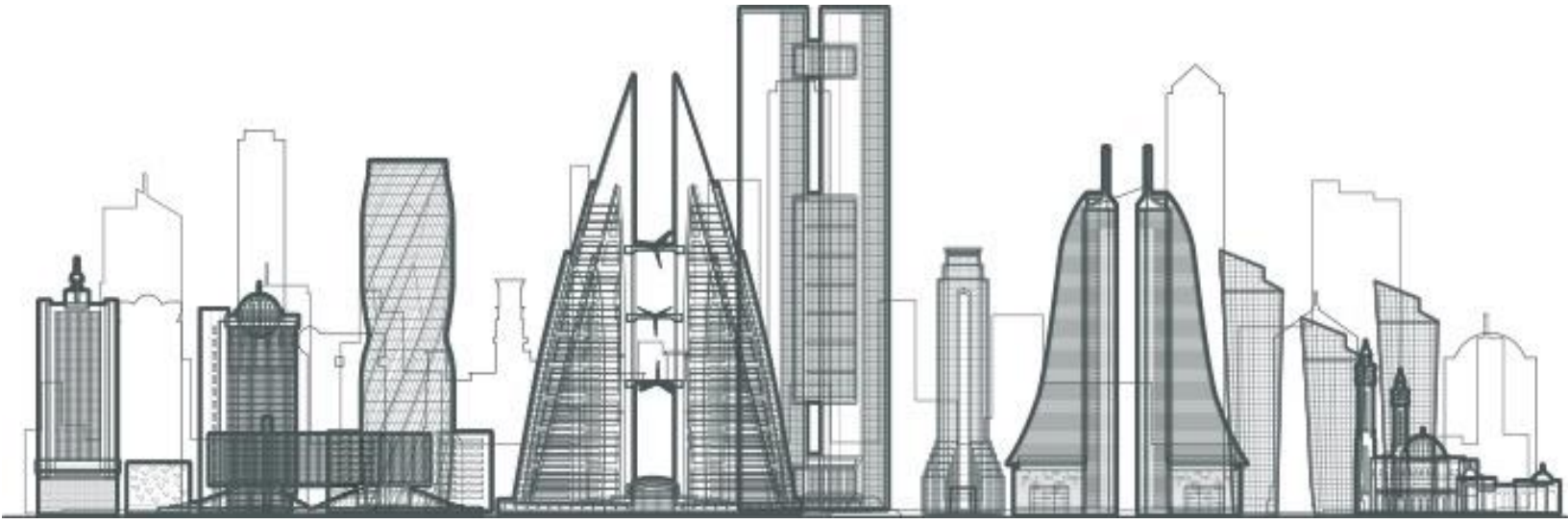
Category	Debt Period	Minimum Actions to be Taken
Current Account	Until 6 months	1. Issue invoices to the client for amounts due. 2. Communicate with the client within a period not exceeding two weeks from the due date, and continuously thereafter to claim the overdue amounts.
Uncollected Revenue (Category A)	6 – 12 months	1. Consider the possibility of rescheduling debts, or including them within the direct deduction mechanism or deduction from the debtor's dues with the government authority or with other government authorities (if any) in coordination with the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.
Uncollected Revenue (Category B)	1 -5 years	1. Initiate legal proceedings against the debtor. 2. . Stop of providing government services to the debtor by the creditor government authority (with compliance to legal matters).
Doubtful debt	5 – 10 years	1. Considering the possibility to stop providing of government services by other government authorities (with compliance to legal matters). 2. Contract with debt collecting entities, whenever possible.

Category	Debt Period	Minimum Actions to be Taken
Uncollectible debt	10 – 15 years	1. Take all steps specified for the items above. 2. Submit a request to reclassify the debt into uncollectible debt and record it in the uncollectible debt register with the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, attached to it all documents proving that all administrative and legal procedures necessary for debt collection have been exhausted.
Write off debt	More than 15 years	1. Take all steps specified for the items above. 2. The authority may submit a request to cancel the debt, with attached evidence that the authority has performed the procedures stipulated in the above paragraph, provided that the request is submitted to: A. Minister of Finance and National Economy for amounts not exceeding 10,000 Bahraini Dinars. B. Ministerial Committee for Financial and Economic Affairs and Financial Balance for Amounts Exceeding 10,000 Bahraini Dinars
	Special cases	1. The death of debtor and five years have passed without evidence of an inheritance from which the debt can be repaid. 2. The bankruptcy of debtor or insolvency, and more than ten years have passed since the debt became due. 3. The debtor has terminated his commercial activity or left the Kingdom of Bahrain without having money or real estate from which the debt can be collected, and more than

Category	Debt Period	Minimum Actions to be Taken
		twenty years have passed since the debt became due. The debtor is located in areas facing security instability, and it has been more than twenty years since the debt became due. 4. A judgment issued by the Court of Cassation stating that the debt is not due.

.4.3.59 With regard to those who have failed to pay the rent of government land and real estate, the beneficiary or tenant who fails to pay the rent due in accordance with the contract done with him, must be required to deposit a letter of guarantee issued by a local bank equivalent to the rent of the leased property for the second period or the value of the rent due for a period of five years before Renewal of the contract for the second period, provided that the beneficiary or the tenant is notified of this by written notification.

5. Current Expenditures



General description of the section		
The coverage	Th provisions regulating the procurement process from the recurrent expenditures budget and controlling some types of expenditures.	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**The Directorate**	**The responsibilities**
	Central Efficiency Directorate	Supervising and controlling purchases of goods and services that are expended from the recurrent expenditures budget
	Central Procurement Directorate	Supervising and controlling of standardized procurement contracts
	International Relations Directorate	Approving to pass subscriptions payments for international organizations.
	Payments and Collection Directorate	Supervising the process of paying suppliers invoices and other parties dues
	Legal Affairs Office	Reviewing of financial contracts templates

.5.1 Introduction and general provisions

.5.1.1 This section includes the regulatory provisions and procedures governing recurrent expenditures and government purchases.

.5.1.2 The requirements for coordination and obtaining the approvals of the directorates of the Assistant Undersecretary for Shared Financial Services set forth in this section apply to government authorities subject to financial supervision by this administrative level only.

.5.1.3 All provisions of the Tender Law and the legislation issued by the Tender Board that regulate government procurement must be adhered.

.5.1.4 The process of disbursing from the recurrent expenditure budget passes through several major stages, which are as follows:

A. **Purchase planning stage:** Establish the internal annual purchase plan.

B. **Purchase requisition stage:** Before starting the procurement procedures, the government authority must submit a request for approval to purchase from the Central Efficiency Directorate, provided that the request specifies the type of service or commodity required and the estimated cost, and attaches to it the required approvals from other government authorities.

C. S**tage of offers receiving and determining the appropriate offer:** After the approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate, the government authority may take the appropriate procurement method to provide the required goods and services in accordance with the provisions of the law and the decisions of the Tender Board.

D. **Stage of the purchase order:** The government authority informs the Central Efficiency Directorate, the government authority, of the supplier that has been selected, in order to obtain the final approval before contracting and dealing with that supplier.

E. **The awarding and contracting stage:** The government authority begins signing the contract and issuing a purchase order to carry out the service or deliver the required commodity.

.5.1.5 A committee consisting of three or more members who have experience and competence, it is formed and determining its members by the competent minister or his equivalent to supervise the procurement process, including the following:

A. Approving the annual purchase plan.

B. Supervising the internal procurement process, and in particular assuming the following responsibilities: receiving bids, laying down evaluation principles and criteria, evaluating offers, making the reasoned decision by choosing the method of contracting other than the method of public tender, making negotiation decisions, and awarding decisions on winning bidders.

C. Approval of the extension, renewal and amendment of internally awarded contracts.

D. Overseeing the procurement processes awarded by the Tender Board.

E. Approving the list of suppliers for direct purchase and limited tenders.

.5.1.6 Government authorities must provide the shared financial services sector with a copy of the decision to form internal procurement committees and any amendments made to their formation.

.5.1.7 Government authorities must adopt policies that ensure the integrity of their procurement activities and processes.

.5.1.8 The all concerned parties must provide clear and complete documentation for all procurement decisions.

.5.1.9 Government authorities must obtain the approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate before contracting to purchase any kind of expenditures, whatever their value, unless they meet the criteria for petty cash or any other expenditures as determined by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, and failure to comply with this provision is considered a financial violation.

.5.1.10 In addition to the approval of the relevant directorates in the shared financial services sector on recurrent expenditures, the following prior approvals must be obtained before entering into any commitment related to the expenditures shown (this term applies in the case of renewal, extension or amendment of the contract):

A. **Expenditures related to information systems, whether programs, applications or devices:** Approval of the Information Systems Directorate of the

concerned government authority and the Information and eGovernment Authority.

B. **Expenditures related to construction and building:** approval of the Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning.

C. **Expenditures related to manpower:** Prior approval must be obtained from the Civil Service Bureau to conclude contracts for the use of manpower or service contracts that depend mainly on the use of manpower, whether those costs are deducted from the recurrent expenditures budget or from the project expenditures budget.

D. **Expenditures related to disposal of government property:** Approval of the Government Property Affairs Directorate.

E. **Project expenditures:** Approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, and the Information and e-Government Authority if the project is related to information systems.

.5.1.11 The prior approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy must be obtained before entering into any contract that entails financial obligations, unless the regulations issued stipulate otherwise, however, in all cases, the following terms must also be implemented:

A. Ensure that any contract that gives rise to a financial obligation has been included in the budget, and that a contract whose value exceeds the budget allocated for it is not committed.

B. Obtaining the approval of the competent authority in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy before implementing any contractual procedures, which include, for example: concluding a new contract, amending an existing contract, or terminating a contract.

C. Obtaining the approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for any terms that affect the value of the contract, for example: setting the price ceiling.

D. Comply with the provisions of the Tenders and Auctions Law and obtain the approval of the Tender Board upon entering into a purchase contract whose value exceeds BD 25,000.

E. Approval of the Legislation and Legal Opinion Authority for contracts whose value exceeds BD 300,000.

Separation of duties

.5.1.12 Government authorities must ensure that there is an appropriate separation for procurement responsibilities, for example: separation between the responsibility to address suppliers to submit proposals and the task of evaluating offers, and the responsibility for receiving goods and services and conducting other related transactions.

.5.2 Purchase stages

Purchase Planning

Setting the annual internal purchasing plan

.5.2.1 Government authorities must prepare an annual internal procurement plan that covers their expected expenditures during the next fiscal year. This plan must be in line with the disbursement plan prepared when submitting the budget proposal.

.5.2.2 The annual internal procurement plan should be split on a quarterly basis.

.5.2.3 Petty cash are not included in the annual internal procurement plan, however they should be budgeted separately.

.5.2.4 When preparing the annual internal procurement plan, the following should be taken into consideration:

A. It provides adequate budget to carry the planned expenditures so that the specified budget ceiling is not exceeded.

B. Various resource requirements (human and other resources).

C. The requirements specified in accordance with the applicable laws, circulars, decisions and provisions of this manual.

D. Distribution of the spending plan according to the appropriate budget items.

E. Grouping needs for goods and services into standardized purchase orders in order to obtain competitive prices.

.5.2.5 The annual internal procurement plan for the government authority must be prepared by the concerned procurement directorate and approved by the authority's internal tendering committee.

.5.2.6 The consolidated plan should include the following:

A. All expenditures are according to the budget item.

B. Estimated quantity for each item.

C. The total cost of each item.

D. Proper purchasing method for every item.

E. The date of the expected disbursement request for each item.

F. Any other information requested by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.5.2.7 The Directorate concerned with procurement in the government authority must submit quarterly reports to the internal tender committee to conduct a quarterly review of the plan against the actual disbursement, provided that these reports are approved by the mentioned committee and kept in the records.

.5.2.8 The internal tender committee approves any changes in the annual internal procurement plan, and the concerned directorate must submit all purchase requests supported by sufficient justifications to the committee for approval.

.5.2.9 The government authority must provide the Ministry of Finance and National Economy with any requests for information or reports related to recurrent expenditures.

Procedures for preparing the annual internal purchase plan

.5.2.10 The annual internal purchase plan is prepared by the following steps:

A. Before the start of each fiscal year and during a sufficient period of time, the directorate responsible for procurement requests budget details related to recurrent expenditures from the directorate responsible for financial resources in the government authority.

B. The directorate concerned with procurement coordinates with other concerned directorates in the government authority to obtain the needs of each directorate of goods and services included in the recurrent expenditures budget for the next fiscal year, by distributing the amounts of these needs according to the appropriate budget items.

C. Each government authority directorate fills out the "detailed annual disbursement plan" form with the help of the directorate concerned with procurement.

D. Concerned directorates shall submit a detailed annual disbursement plan form attached to it, with justifications for the required needs, to the directorate concerned with procurement.

E. The directorate concerned with procurement shall:

1. Reviewing the received estimates and ensuring their suitability and not overstating them, analysing and compiling the estimates and preparing the annual internal procurement plan according to the budget items.

2. Studying the possible strategic options to provide the required purchasing needs at the best possible value and at the lowest possible cost, whenever possible.

3. Submit the draft annual internal procurement plan to the internal tender committee for review and approval.

F. Based on the committee's review, and when adjustments are required, the concerned procurement directorate makes the necessary adjustments in coordination with the other concerned directorates in the government authority.

G. In the case that the plan meets all requirements, it is approved by the internal tender committee and disbursement takes place during the fiscal year according to it.

Standard purchase contracts

.5.2.11 The Central Government Procurement Directorate is responsible for preparing standard purchase contracts to meet the needs of government authorities in terms of goods and services, and government authorities must commit to purchasing through these contracts, if available.

.5.2.12 Government authorities must provide the Central Government Procurement Directorate with information and reports about their purchases and their plans for disbursement, upon the request of the mentioned directorate, in an accurate and timely manner.

.5.2.13 Government authorities must record all data related to their purchases and share them with the Central Government Procurement Directorate on a quarterly basis.

.5.2.14 Concerned government authorities must provide the Central Government Procurement Directorate with the data they require in order to plan and prepare for standard purchase contracts, for example the following:

A. Planned purchases.

B. Specifications of goods and services.

C. Required quantity.

D. Historical spending and consumption data.

E. Planned tendering method.

F. Any other relevant details requested by the concerned directorate.

.5.2.15 After concluding the standard purchase contracts, government authorities are notified of these contracts to contract with suppliers to provide their needs of goods and services according to the standard prices agreed upon in these contracts.

.5.2.16 The government authority which will purchase shall be responsible for contracting and paying the supplier's dues according to the terms stipulated in the standard purchase contract.

Issuing of purchase request

.5.2.17 It is not permissible for government authorities to initiate procurement and tendering procedures except after approval of the purchase request from the Central Efficiency Directorate.

The purchase cost estimation

.5.2.18 The concerned directorates must submit purchase requests within a sufficient period to allow the concerned directorate to complete the review and evaluation procedures and submit the request to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy in a timely manner.

.5.2.19 Since the final cost of the purchase may not be known at the time of submitting the purchase requisition, the following can be relied upon when estimating the cost of purchase requisitions:

A. The previous prices that contracted by the relevant government authority or other government authority to purchase similar goods or services.

B. Be guided by relevant current or prior contracts, including standard purchase contracts.

C. Request to obtain information from suppliers in accordance with the legislation regulating government procurement or through any other similar method, provided that it is clarified to suppliers that the request is for the purpose of study and initial evaluation and will not entail any contractual obligations with them at this stage.

D. According to the prices specified in the relevant consolidated purchase contracts.

E. Government policies issued regarding some types of similar purchases (such as furniture and office rentals).

F. Evaluate the market price by searching on websites or other research methods.

G. Previous experience and current contracts for other government authorities.

H. The prices at which the budget estimates are based.

I. Price ceilings specified in this manual for some types of charges.

.5.2.20 The following should be taken into consideration when estimating the cost of a purchase requisition:

A. The estimated cost in the purchase requisition be accurate as possible, and that the method and basis of the cost calculation be indicated within the order.

B. To be comprehensive for a breakdown of any other costs associated with the order where this information is available. Such as shipping and delivery costs.

C. Reflect expected changes in prices and trends in the market, if applicable.

D. If the purchase requisition for contracting is for a period of more than one year, the cash flow for each fiscal year must be estimated from the requested contract.

E. If the purchase requisition relates to a recurring service with existing contracts, acceptable justifications must be provided in case there are differences between the two prices.

F. Ensure that the value-added tax is applicable to each of the types required to be purchased, and include that value of that tax in the estimation of the cost of the purchase order if it applies to the good or service required to be purchased.

Submit request of purchase requisitions approval

.5.2.21 Government authorities must initiate the submission of purchase requests for approval early and within a sufficient period of time for consideration by the Central Efficiency Directorate and other relevant government authorities, thus avoiding price rises than expected.

.5.2.22 The Ministry of Finance and National Economy may request the requester government authority to review the estimated costs or request further evidence or justifications on how the estimated cost is calculated.

.5.2.23 Government authorities must take into consideration the following with regard to issuing purchase orders:

A. Every purchase requisition must have a non-duplicating reference number.

B. Approval and authorization of the purchase requisition internally in the government authority according to the levels of authority specified in this manual.

C. The availability of adequate budget for each item of the specified budget for the expenditures to be purchased and that these expenditures are included in the approved disbursement plan of the government authority.

D. Reserve its budget under the correct tab for disbursement.

E. The obligations and contracts related to the request are compatible with the provisions and regulations of procurement.

F. Obtaining prior approval from the concerned government authorities.

G. Attach all supporting documents.

H. Merging similar needs into a single purchase order, and not dividing them with the purpose of circumventing laws or control procedures.

5.2.24. Entering any financial obligations not approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and contracting without issuing a purchase order issued by the Central Financial System is a financial contravention of the approved procedures.

.5.2.25 Without prejudice to the Tenders and Auctions Law, government authorities may adopt any of the below-mentioned procurement methods with suppliers, and government authorities must ensure that the procurement method and justifications for choosing it are determined when submitting the request for approval of the purchase order:

A. The tender is in two stages.

B. Limited tender.

C. Competitive negotiation.

D. Direct purchase.

E. Request for proposals.

Procedures for submitting a request for approval of a purchase request

.5.2.26 The procedures for approving purchase requests are done according to the following:

A. Based on the disbursement plan and the government authority’s need, the directorate concerned with Financial Affairs reviews the purchase requests received from the concerned directorates in the government authority and estimates the purchase cost of those requests.

B. The directorate of Finance ensures that the supporting documents are available, the required recurrent expenditures are in line with the spending plan, the correct budget tab code has been chosen, and the adequate budget is

available. In the case that all of these terms are not met, this directorate will return the request to the requester directorate and coordinate with it to fulfil the required conditions, such as: postponing the request, making transfers in the budget, or requesting an additional budget.

C. The Directorate concerned with financial affairs studies the purchase request in terms of the existence of an actual need and realistic justifications for submitting it, and that the return and benefit from the request exceeds the cost that will be carry on the authority's budget, and from the absence of other suitable alternatives.

D. Upon approval of the request, the directorate concerned with financial affairs issues the purchase request, including the following data and documents:

- Goods and / or services requested.
- Justifications for the need to purchase and value for money.
- The budget item to which it relates.
- Negotiation strategy.
- The estimated total cost of the request, including VAT, and the justifications for calculating these costs.
- Any other costs associated with the purchase, such as: delivery and installation fees.
- Any documents required by the Central Efficiency Directorate and the supporting technical committees.
- Previous contract (if available).
- Determine whether the request related to a new contract or amend, renew or extend an existing contract
- The time period for:
  - To conduct a tender.
  - Contracting.
  - Receiving the requested commodity or service.
- Suggested purchase method.

E. If the required contract is to last for several years or includes deferred payments, the cash flows must be determined for each period.

F. Any other data related to a purchase request in addition to other data and documents that may be required by the Central Efficiency Directorate.

G. The budget is reserved for the request and the request is approved according to the levels of authority specified in the government authority.

H. The purchase process will be cancelled if the request is rejected by the competent authority within the government authority.

I. In the case that the request is approved by the competent authority in the government authority, the directorate concerned with Financial Affairs sends the request along with the supporting documents to the other concerned government authorities for prior approval if the procedures require that.

J. After completing the required prior approvals, the directorate concerned with financial affairs sends the purchase request and its attachments to the Central Efficiency Directorate through the Central Financial System for approval.

K. The Central Efficiency Directorate evaluates the request, and in the case that it does not meet the conditions, it will be rejected and returned to the requester government authority with an explanation of the reasons for the return.

L. In the case that the request is rejected, the process is terminated, and the reservation is cancelled from the budget, and in the case that the request is approved, the government authority begins the next stage of the purchase process.

M. The Central Efficiency Directorate must be notified immediately upon the cancellation of the purchase request by the government authority, and the government authority may not proceed with the procurement procedures or commitment after cancelling the purchase request or cancelling the budget reservation.

Determination of appropriate purchase offer

.5.2.27 After the purchase request is approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, the government authority begins the process of selecting the appropriate offer by following one of the established procurement methods based on the estimated value of the purchase request.

.5.2.28 Government authorities shall strive to develop their procurement methods in line with the provisions of the Tender and Auctions Law.

.5.2.29 Government authorities must provide the Shared Financial Services Sector with a copy of the procurement procedures record at least once every year or as requested by the mentioned section.

Internal tenders

.5.2.30 Government authorities may carry out procurement procedures internally without referring to the Tender Board for purchases whose value does not exceed 25,000 Bahraini Dinars in accordance with the Tenders and Auctions Law and the decisions issued in this regard, according to the following:

A. **Direct purchase** by obtaining a minimum of one offer for purchases whose value does not exceed BD 3,000, and government authorities must obtain additional quotations if requested to do so by the Central Efficiency Directorate.

B. **Purchasing by obtaining of three offers** as a minimum for purchases whose value exceeds 3,000 and does not exceed 10,000 Bahraini Dinars, and government authorities must obtain additional quotations if requested by the Central Efficiency Directorate.

C. **Purchasing by public tender** and announcing it to obtain offers by suppliers who wish to participate in accordance with the terms and documents of the tender, or by following the method of limited tender - according to a reasoned decision from the internal committee for tenders, Auctions, purchases and sales - by inviting all or the largest possible number of suppliers or contractors working in the same type of activity, subject of the tender and who are registered in the government authority's records and the Tender Board, for purchases whose value exceeds 10,000 and does not exceed 25,000 Bahraini Dinars.

.5.2.31 Government authorities must keep a "procurement procedures register", in which all the data specified in the template approved by the Tender Board shall be recorded, and the Board must be provided with a record of procurement procedures for purchases whose value exceeds 10,000 and does not exceed BD 25,000 on a quarterly basis at least.

.5.2.32 The supplier is not required to submit an initial guarantee in cases of purchase whose estimated value does not exceed 10,000 Dinars.

.5.2.33 When adopting the method of direct purchase or purchase by requesting three offers, government authorities must take into consideration the following:

A. Diversification in choosing suppliers without compromising quality.

B. The possibility of requiring suppliers to prove their ability to provide services.

.5.2.34 In the case of internal tenders, negotiations may be made with the bidder to reduce it to the estimated value without prejudice to the laws and legislations governing procurement if the value of the offer to be awarded exceeds the estimated value in the purchase request, and if a lower price is not reached, the government authority shall attach what supports that to the request for approval. Issuing the purchase order, in addition to confirming the availability of the budget covering the amount of the increase, or by attaching the award decision issued by the Board if the value of the offer after negotiation is still higher than this ceiling.

.5.2.35 Without prejudice to the law and legislation of the Tender Board regulating government procurement, bids are received in a sealed envelope and are opened and evaluated on a predetermined date, and bids must be evaluated according to previously approved standards.

Public tenders

.5.2.36 Bids whose value exceeds the estimated value of BD 25,000 shall be awarded by the Tender Board.

.5.2.37 Government authorities shall submit to the Tender Board, a written confirmation from the Ministry of Finance and National Economy that adequate budget is available upon submitting the tender request.

.5.2.38 The approval of the Tender Board is not required for solo purchases made by government authorities with a value exceeding BD 25,000 through the standard purchase contract, as it is subject to prior approval by the Board.

.5.2.39 Each public tender shall be accompanied by an initial guarantee, the value, content and form of which are specified in the tender documents.

Standard purchase contracts

.5.2.40 Government authorities must ensure that standard purchase contracts cover their needs of goods and services before deciding on the purchasing method through which those needs will be provided.

.5.2.41 In the case of a standard purchase contract for the required purchases, the government authority conducts the purchasing process with the supplier listed in that contract.

.5.2.42 Government authorities subject to the standard purchase contracts must conclude separate supplementary contracts with the relevant supplier (suppliers) in accordance with the general provisions of the standard purchase contract, provided that these contracts are approved by the Central Government Procurement Directorate before they become effective, and the provisions of the supplementary contract must also be consistent with the general provisions and requirements of the standard purchase contract.

.5.2.43 The concerned government authority is responsible for determining the detailed requirements within the supplementary contract, and it must also ensure that all payments to the supplier providing goods or services are made in accordance with the conditions stipulated in both the standard purchase contract and the supplementary contract.

.5.2.44 The government authority contracts directly with the supplier within the standard purchase contract, and independently manages contractual terms including payments, guarantees and receipt.

.5.2.45 The approval of the Central Procurement Directorate must be obtained before concluding the supplementary contract with the supplier.

Pre-approval to issue purchase orders

.5.2.46 The government authorities must obtain the approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate to issue a purchase order before awarding or signing the contract with the supplier.

.5.2.47 The awarding decision is not notified to the winning bidder until after approval of the purchase order by the Central Efficiency Directorate.

.5.2.48 When submitting the request to approve the issuance of the purchase order to the Central Efficiency Directorate, the government authority must make sure to attach evidence that it has completed the following requirements:

A. Obtaining approval from the internal procurement committee or the Tender Board (depending on the contract value).

B. Obtaining the required approvals from other government authorities.

C. Final budget allocation for the expenditure.

D. A draft copy of the contract, if applicable.

E. Obtaining the approval of the Payments and Collection Directorate in the case that an advance payment is required.

F. Obtaining the approval of the Tender Board if its value exceeds the amount of 25,000 dinars, and the purchase is not part of a previously approved standard purchase contract.

G. Justifications in the case of a difference between the purchase order and the request.

H. Provide any other data that may be required by the Central Efficiency Directorate.

The difference between a purchase requisition and a purchase order

.5.2.49 The Central Efficiency Directorate must be approved of any changes between purchase request and order.

.5.2.50 The differences that occur between the purchase requisition and the purchase order are not considered a change in the contract, as according to the provisions stipulated in this manual, the contract must not be signed with the supplier before the purchase order is approved.

.5.2.51 In the case that the final cost of the purchase is higher than what was specified in the purchase order, the government authority must attach acceptable justifications when submitting the purchase order approval request.

.5.2.52 You must ensure that you have sufficient budget to cover any additional costs resulting from a modification to the cost specified in the purchase requisition.

Awarding and contracting with the supplier

.5.2.53 Government authorities must, before implementing purchasing contracts, ensure that the following requirements are met:

A. The purchase contract was included in the disbursement plan when preparing the budget estimates, and that the value of any contract does not exceed the value included in the disbursement plan approved in the budget.

B. Notify the concerned directorate in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy before implementing any contractual procedures, including concluding a new contract, amending an existing contract, or terminating a contract.

.5.2.54 In the case that the purchase order is approved by the Central Efficiency Directorate, the government authority shall:

A. Inform the supplier who won the award, subject to the law and legislation regulating government procurement.

B. Sending the letter of intent to contract to the supplier to whom the bid was awarded, so that he submits the implementation guarantee according to the terms of the tender.

C. Obtaining the approval of the Legislation and Legal Opinion Authority on the contract before signing it by the concerned government authority in the case that the purchase value exceeds BD 300,000.

D. Signing the contract with the supplier and receiving the required goods and / or services.

E. Examining all goods and services before their final acceptance, and in case they are accepted, the delivery note is entered into the Central Financial System.

F. When purchasing a fixed asset, the fixed asset register is updated.

.5.2.55 When contracting with a supplier, the following should be taken into consideration:

A. Ensure that the parties with whom the contract is signed are present, and that the signatory who represents the supplier is a legal person and has the authority to sign the contract.

B. Registration of the full name of the contracting parties according to the official documents.

C. The government authority has signed the contract only by authorized persons according to the specified levels of authority.

.5.2.56 It is not permissible to start any contracted work before the signing of the contract and / or the purchase order authorization has been signed by all concerned parties.

.5.2.57 The reliability of the supplier with whom the contract will be concluded must be verified through the appropriate channels to ensure verification of his legal eligibility to implement the contract, and the following must be taken into consideration:

A. Ensure the identity of the supplier who will be contracted with by examining the commercial registry and / or the ID card if it is local.

B. Obtaining information about the reliability of the supplier from the embassy or consulate that represents the country of that supplier if he is a foreigner.

Typical contracts

.5.2.58 The typical contracts approved by the Tender Board must be used to conclude purchase contracts with suppliers.

.5.2.59 In the absence of a typical contract approved by the Tender Board that matches the nature of the contract to be executed, the government authority prepares the proposed contract and submits it to the legal advisor at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for review, and then it is submitted to the Tender Board for approval.

.5.2.60 The purchase contracts must include details and explanation of the following, depending on the nature of each contract:

A. A specific number for each contract.

B. A detailed description of the scope of work and the purpose of the contract.

C. Define the terms used in the contract.

D. Required contract outputs, service delivery requirements, and key performance indicators.

E. Contract amount.

F. Start and end date.

G. A breakdown of the cost of the service or commodity provided and the basis for calculating the cost.

H. Conditions related to cost escalation.

I. The period and schedule for implementing the contract and clearly indicating the date on which it will start and the expected completion date.

J. Conditions for variation orders.

K. Conditions of claims.

L. Conditions for early termination of contract and conditions for resolving disputes over various cases, which include:

M. Termination by the contracting party.

N. Termination by the supplier.

O. Termination by mutual agreement.

P. Payment terms and conditions are within clear stages, and this includes the required advance payments, and prepayment requirements.

Q. Determine all parties participating in the contract, in particular:

1. The suppliers and any third party related to the contract.

2. Government authorities that are part of the contract.

3. Any other parties involved in the contract such as witnesses.

R. A clear definition of the responsibilities of the parties participating in the contract.

S. Fines and penalties applicable to the contract.

T. The time and delivery requirements and procedures related to contract completion and closure.

U. Legal foundations and litigation bodies in the case of a dispute.

V. Any other terms and conditions.

.5.2.61 The use of the Bahraini dinar must be contracted for in all local government dealings.

.5.2.62 The government authority must keep two copies of the contract and its attachments and all subsequent amendments to it, and it must keep the contracts in a safe place and prevent access to them from those who are not authorized to do so.

.5.2.63 The contracting government authority must stamp all contract pages and all supplementary documents, if any, with a stamp shows its name, and it must save the contracts in paper and electronic form.

.5.2.64 A printed (paper) contract is not acceptable if:

A. It has not been stamped by the government authority.

B. Written with an easily removable or altered material, such as a pencil.

C. Is not clear.

D. The contract was changed without signing the amendments by the two parties and writing the date of the amendment and notifying the concerned parties of the amendment made to the contract.

E. Signatures do not match with authorized parties.

5.2.65 The concerned government authority must take into consideration the availability of the following conditions in the electronic contract:

A. Ensure that the parties signing the contract are authorized and their electronic signature can be verified.

B. Preserving the contract in a way that allows only authorized persons to have access to it, and to allow the ability to refer to it and make any necessary subsequent changes to it.

C. Encryption of the contract (drafts and final version) to prevent unauthorized viewing or modification of it.

Implementation guarantee

.5.2.66 The implementation guarantee is received to ensure the proper implementation of the contract by the supplier, and it is refunded upon expiry of the contract according to the agreed terms.

.5.2.67 The supplier to whom the contract was awarded must pay the guarantee for the implementation of the contract according to the percentage specified by the Tender Board, during the period specified in the tender documents, and in line with the terms and conditions of the Tenders and Auctions Law and the decisions of the Tender Board.

.5.2.68 The contract implementation guarantee period may not end before the actual completion date.

.5.2.69 The supplier is not required to submit an initial guarantee in cases of purchase whose estimated value does not exceed 10,000 dinars.

Duration of the contract

.5.2.70 The approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate must be obtained to contract for a period exceeding one year and up to four years, and government authorities may not conclude a contract that entails a financial commitment of more than four years without the approval of the Minister of Finance and National Economy.

Receipt of goods and services

.5.2.71 Goods and materials must be checked upon receipt to confirm the completeness, safety, quality, validity and compliance with the required specifications. Goods and materials that do not comply with the required specifications must be rejected and returned to the supplier.

.5.2.72 (Receipt) of purchases is authorized according to the authority levels granted to the concerned employee, after ensuring that the specifications and number match with the terms of the purchase request and the contract.

.5.2.73 (Delivery) of purchases is authorized according to the authority levels specified in the subsection "Financial Authorities" no. (2.4), after verifying the correctness of the amounts and the expending tabs.

.5.2.74 Initiative must be taken to record the receipt of goods and services in the Central Financial System during the financial period in which the receipt of those goods and services was accepted, and not delay this until after the closing of that period.

Cancellation / Amendment of contracts / Purchase requests or orders

.5.2.75 It is permissible to amend the contract signed by agreement between the contracting government authority and the contractor in the case that there are acceptable justifications for the amendment by notifying the contracting party in writing of its desire to amend the contract, or receiving a written request from the contractor informing it of his desire to amend the contract, explaining the justifications for the amendment request.

.5.2.76 Government authorities may not amend the contract except after obtaining prior approval from the Central Efficiency Directorate, regardless of the value of the amendment, and this includes additional requests related to emergency requests or services upon request.

.5.2.77 It is not permissible to commit to any additional costs resulting from a change in the purchase contract without the prior approval of the concerned directorate in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.5.2.78 Requests submitted to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy to approve the amendment of purchase contracts must be supported by acceptable

justifications, and include an assessment of the impact of the amendment on the following:

A. Contract Value.

B. Contract schedule.

C. The scope of the contract.

D. The final objectives and outputs of the contract, in cases where this is required.

E. Any other important aspects.

.5.2.79 In addition to the approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate, obtaining the approval of the Tender Board is required to amend the contract that has been awarded by the Board if the amendment will result in an increase or decrease in the value of the original contract by 15% or more.

.5.2.80 Government authorities must obtain the approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate on any amendments to recurrent expenditures (whether related to a contract with a supplier or labour) in case these changes require modifying the budget and / or the disbursement plan.

.5.2.81 It is not permissible to cancel or amend any request or purchase order related to existing obligations without obtaining the prior approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate.

.5.2.82 In the case that the requisition or purchase order is cancelled, the budget amount remains withheld unless otherwise requested.

.5.2.83 Requests for modification of requisitions or purchase orders which are approved before shall be submitted within a maximum of one working day after the process of removing the hold. Here are examples of the reasons for the change:

a. The change in the contract price.

B. Change in scope of contract.

C. Change in contract schedule.

D. Any other change has a potential impact on the cost and cash flow of the expenditures.

.5.2.84 If the final cost of the purchase is lower than what was agreed upon with the supplier according to the approved purchase order, the government authority must

inform the Ministry of Finance and National Economy as soon as possible in order to remove the reservation for the remaining amount in the budget associated with the purchase order.

.5.2.85 All contract modifications are added as an appendix to the original contract.

Renewal and extension of the contracts

.5.2.86 The government authority must obtain the prior approval of the Tender Board to extend and renew contracts that were awarded by the Board, as well as internally concluded, if the cumulative value of the contract exceeds the financial ceiling set for the internal contract.

.5.2.87 The approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy must be obtained and confirmed that there is sufficient budget to cover any additional financial obligation arising from the amendment, extension or renewal of contracts, before submitting the request for approval of the amendment, extension or renewal to the Tender Board.

.5.2.88 Contracts are not renewed or extended unless there are acceptable justifications.

.5.2.89 All requests for contract renewal shall be submitted no later than three months prior to their expiry for approval by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and then by the Tender Board.

Standard purchase contracts

.5.2.90 In the case of concluding standard purchase contracts, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy authorizes a specific party to conclude these contracts.

.5.2.91 The contracting party must, within standard contracts, ensure that the contract specifies all government authorities that will be covered by the contract, and - when there is a need for this - the stipulation in the contract on the appropriate method for adding and / or removing government authorities during the contract implementation period.

.5.2.92 Standard purchase contracts may be prepared to include more than one government authority and multiple suppliers.

.5.2.93 Unless otherwise stipulated in the standard purchase contract, the conclusion of that contract does not in itself lead to the emergence of a commitment by the government authorities whose names are listed in the contract, and when any of those authorities need to purchase in accordance with the terms and conditions of the standard purchase contract, the concerned government authority shall conclude a supplementary contract with the supplier specified in the standard purchase contract.

.5.2.94 The supplementary contract of the standard purchase contract must specify the detail of the scope of work with the supplier, and always the supplementary contract must be compatible with the standard purchase contract.

Termination of the contract

.5.2.95 The purchase contract may be terminated early, either with the agreement of the two parties, or terminated by the contracting government authority, in accordance with the following provisions:

A. The contract be terminated according to the agreed terms and conditions.

B. The contracting government authority, when it desires to terminate the contract, notifies the contractor in writing.

C. The government authority must notify the concerned directorate in the Ministry of Finance and National Economy when early termination of the contract is required.

.5.2.96 Before closing the contract, the contracting government authority must ensure that all deliveries are completed, and all claims are resolved.

.5.3 Special provisions for some types of expenditures

General Provisions

.5.3.1 The financial limits for expending specified in this subsection include the value of value added tax (VAT).

Petty cash

.5.3.2 The provisions specified under this heading shall generally apply to any purchase of less than BD 50, except as determined by the Central Efficiency Directorate.

.5.3.3 Any purchases related to recurrent expenditures costing BD 50 or more must be made, as per the purchase procedures described in this manual.

.5.3.4 The disbursement of the petty cash should be limited to expenditures related to daily business, and should not be used for personal purposes, or to pay bills, or to pay variations in the values of purchase requests and orders or to pay additional fees resulting from changing orders, or to pay claims or circumvent in any other policies regulating the purchasing process by issuing purchase requisitions and orders.

.5.3.5 It is not permissible to divide the procurement and purchasing through the petty cash with the intention of avoiding the conditions, procedures, or other controls stipulated in this manual relating to purchases of recurrent expenditures.

.5.3.6 The petty cash may not be used for any purposes other than those for which it was approved, The following is an explanation for expenditures which are allowed and which are not allowed to be purchased through the petty cash expenditures:

A. The expenditures which are not allowed to be purchased through petty cash:

1. Stationery supplies.
2. Fuel and vehicle maintenance.
3. Expenditures related to information technology.
4. Agricultural and medical tools.
5. Printing services.

6. Events costs.

7. Transportation costs.

8. Purchase gifts.

9. Maintenance of devices (of any kind, including small appliances).

B. The expenditures which are allowed to be purchased through petty cash, taking into consideration all other conditions related to petty cash:

1. Paying some service fees (such as causeway crossing fees, parking fees, and visa issuance fees) and that is in the narrowest limits.

2. First aid kit and what is attached to it.

3. Emergency maintenance tools.

4. Providing drinking water.

5. Snacks for guests.

6. Electrical transformers and batteries.

7. Other expenditures related to preparing foods (such as: saffron, cardamom, rose water, luxury water bottles, luxury coffee, sugar, all kinds of juices, charcoal and incense, air fresheners, coffee capsules, single-use utensils).

.5.3.7 The disbursement of the petty cash must be authorized by the director of the requesting directorate, according to the specified authority levels.

.5.3.8 Petty cash is recorded on the account code designated for it within the standardized classification of recurrent expenditures budget.

Methods of communication

.5.3.9 The Directorate concerned with financial resources in the government authority is responsible for approving the allocation and replacement of telecommunications equipment in a manner that does not conflict with the civil service legislation issued in this regard.

.5.3.10 The purchase and allocation of methods of communication is subject to the controls and procedures issued by the Information and eGovernment Authority and the Civil Service Bureau.

Office phone lines

.5.3.11 The office phone lines are allocated according to the work need and according to the following:

A. Undersecretary and assistant undersecretary or their equivalent: an international direct line, an international direct line through the secretary, and a line from the exchange.

B. Directors or their equivalent: an international direct line through the secretary, and a line from the exchange.

C. Experts, chiefs of sections and employees: a line from the exchange only.

Mobile phone

.5.3.12 It is not permissible to assign mobile phones to government employees, and office phone lines are not allowed to be replaced by a mobile phone.

.5.3.13 A one-time lump sum may be disbursed during service in the government determined by the Civil Service Bureau to employees of government authorities whose work tasks require the use of their personal phones to complete official duties.

5.3.14 A communication allowance may be paid at the rate of 50 dinars per month for the occupants of the highest positions in the government, and for employees whose work responsibilities require the use of their personal phones and other methods of communication, a communication allowance is paid at the rate of 35 dinars per month, and the allowance is paid to them when using the mobile phone only for work purposes.

Portable or fixed wireless radios

5.3.15 Government authorities must adhere by the laws regulating the use of portable or fixed wireless radios, and they must obtain the necessary approvals and licenses

for use from the concerned government authorities to approve the use of radio frequencies, and appropriate internal controls must be applied for the use and allocation of these devices.

Local calls

.5.3.16 Government authorities must use voice or video calls over the internet to communicate with internal parties, if this service is available.

.5.3.17 The Directorates concerned with financial resources in government authorities must establish instructions and take necessary measures to rationalize the use of phones for local calls.

International calls

.5.3.18 Government authorities must use voice or video calls over the internet to communicate with external parties, if this service is available.

.5.3.19 In the case that the internet calling option is not available, the following applies to making international calls:

A. Obtaining the approval of the Civil Service Bureau to allow employees of government authorities to make international calls for official work purposes.

B. Provide Payments and Collection Directorate with details of international calls.

C. The approval of the official in charge of the employee (at a level not less than a director) before making international calls from the work phone.

D. The approval of the official in charge of the employee (at a level not less than a director) for the employee to make official international calls from his own phone, and he is entitled to compensation for the cost of those calls.

E. The form "International Telephone Call" no. (2304) is used to submit requests for approval of international calls.

F. All international calls must be made from the work location, whenever appropriate in terms of the local and international time difference.

Vehicles

.5.3.20 The government authority shall provide the necessary methods of transportation to complete work requirements and accomplish the required official tasks, in accordance with the controls set by the civil service legislation, the provisions and procedures of this system and other relevant legislation.

.5.3.21 The car allowance shall be paid to the employee who is required to use his own car for transportation to perform official work duties, in accordance with the conditions and procedures specified by the civil service regulations issued in this regard.

.5.3.22 Taking into consideration the other provisions and controls specified in this section, it is allowed to provide methods of transportation by leasing vehicles from the private sector in any of the following cases:

A. Frequent commuting between work sites with roads that are not suitable for the use of the employee's vehicle.

B. If the nature of the work requires the use of a vehicle or machinery with special specifications.

C. The average distance an employee passes with his private vehicle to perform job duties exceeds the average of 1,000 KM per month.

D. Carrying out official duties that by their nature require providing vehicles belonging to the government authority, such as delivering government correspondence, delivering official visitors, or transporting equipment.

E. Any other cases approved by the Manpower Planning and Budget Directorate.

.5.3.23 In cases that justify the leasing of vehicles in accordance with the conditions of this system, the government authority must choose a daily, weekly, or monthly contract or any other type of contract appropriate with the nature and duration of the need for vehicles and in a manner that achieves the lowest rental cost possible, and this includes considering concluding timely contracts in the case of a frequent need to provide vehicles, if this option is more economical.

.5.3.24 It is not permissible for government authorities to purchase vehicles except in the absence of the required vehicle leasing services in the private sector, such as

vehicles with special uses or technical specifications, and subject to the approval of the Budget Directorate.

.5.3.25 The government authorities must obtain prior approval from Manpower Planning and Budget Directorate at the Civil Service Bureau to purchase government vehicles or leasing vehicles for a period of more than one month, in order to ensure the availability of jobs within the organizational structure of the administrative unit for which the government authority will provide vehicle which appropriate with the nature of the required vehicles uses and from not paying users a car allowance for government vehicle.

.5.3.26 It is not allowed to divide the lease contracts in order to avoid the obligation to apply the specific controls regarding the leasing of vehicles.

.5.3.27 Government vehicles may not be provided to transport employees to whom a car allowance is paid, except in the case that they are transported in the same vehicle to accomplish official duties with others who are not paid that allowance to perform the same official task.

.5.3.28 A driver's job is required within the organizational structure of the administrative unit to which the government vehicle will be provided if it is for the purposes of delivering correspondence, delivering equipment, or delivering official visitors, or if the vehicle is of a special nature.

.5.3.29 Government vehicles are designated for shared use, and it is not permissible to allocate a government vehicle for individual use by an employee, unless the vehicles are primarily designated for shared use to transport employees and accomplish official tasks by a driver who is assigned to use a specific vehicle with the aim of specifying responsibilities and achieving better control over vehicles.

.5.3.30 Vehicles may be allocated to specific administrative units according to the following conditions:

A. One car is allocated to the minister's office and the office of the undersecretary or their equivalent.

B. One car is allocated to each of three offices of assistant undersecretary or their equivalent if their offices are in one location, and if their offices are located in separate locations, it is permissible to allocate a separate car for each office.

C. A maximum of two cars are allocated for correspondence purposes for all administrative units of the government authority.

D. A maximum of two cars are allocated for directorates that perform administrative tasks other than correspondence, and a maximum of ten cars are allocated to directorates that perform technical tasks.

.5.3.31 The approval of the Manpower Planning and Budgeting Directorate in the Civil Service Bureau must be obtained regarding the allocation of the use of vehicles, in accordance with the conditions set forth in clause no. (5.3.30) or for any exceptions required by the work interest.

.5.3.32 It is not permissible to increase the current number of government vehicles leased by government authorities, and they must consider the possibility of allocating or establishing a central car park for the purpose of sharing cars by more than one user for more than one purpose, and managing the use of vehicles in a way that reduces the total number of them as much as possible.

.5.3.33 A government vehicle may only be used by employees authorized by the competent directorate in the government authority.

.5.3.34 The government authority shall carry the fees for extracting and renewing a driver's license for an employee who occupies / will occupy a job as a driver within its organizational structure.

Conditions for vehicle leasing

.5.3.35 Saloon vehicles are leased when needed to provide government vehicles to accomplish official duties, and four-wheel drive vehicles (cars designated for use on rough or off roads) may be leased, if the nature of the roads in which the vehicle will be used necessitates providing that type of car.

.5.3.36 The type of vehicle, its engine power, size and specifications must match the nature of its use by the government authority, taking into consideration providing the vehicle with the minimum specifications appropriate to the nature of work, and at the lowest possible cost, and taking into consideration that the maximum monthly rental value for each vehicle does not exceed the following limits:

A. 140 BD for administrative vehicles.

B. 180 BD for technical vehicles and this includes the saloon vehicles and the vehicles of 4 wheels drive.

5.3.37 The average daily cost of leasing vehicles should not exceed 18 Bahraini Dinars, in the case of contracting to provide a car for a period of less than one month.

5.3.38 The provisions under "Official Hospitality" of this subsection define the daily rental ceiling for the leasing of vehicles that are used for the purposes of delivering official guests.

.5.3.39 Government authorities must choose cars that are classified as "good" or better in terms of their fuel consumption, according to the classification issued by the Ministry of Industry, Commerce and Tourism.

.5.3.40 When contracting with car leasing companies, the government authority may not commit to maintaining or repairing the vehicles, and it must contract with leasing companies that provide comprehensive insurance only for their vehicles, so that the government authority does not carry the costs of repairing the vehicle in the case of a traffic accident, with the exception of the excess amount specified in the insurance document (if the government authority is obligated to carry it according to the terms of contract with the supplier).

.5.3.41 Separate contracts must be concluded to lease government vehicles, and clauses related to providing vehicles may not be included in other service contracts, such as construction projects or maintenance.

.5.3.42 It is not permissible to include the lease request or tender documents, a condition that the leased vehicle is owned after the lease period ends, and if the best bid includes an offer to own the vehicle to the government authority after the lease period ends without additional costs, then that offer may be accepted provided that the vehicle is disposed once it is owned, and then handle it according to the procedures and provisions for disposing assets specified in the fixed assets section of this manual.

Fuel procurement

.5.3.43 Government authorities must reserve the budget at the estimated value of fuel consumption for a fiscal year by issuing a request and purchase order that covers this period.

.5.3.44 Government authorities must purchase the type of fuel that is appropriate for the type of leased car, according to the recommendations issued by the Ministry of Industry, Commerce and Tourism or the car dealer.

.5.3.45 The electronic fuel purchase payment cards issued by Bapco (Sadeem) are only used for dispensing fuel of government vehicles, unless a similar service is available that includes the control procedures provided by that card as a minimum, in this case other cards may be used.

.5.3.46 Fuel is not allowed to be allocated for other than government vehicles that are owned or leased for official purposes.

.5.3.47 The employee supervising the vehicles in the government authority must review the periodic statements issued by the company that provides fuel spending cards and monitor the fuel spending rates that are equal to (fuel quantity ÷ distance crossed).

.5.3.48 In cases where a large difference is observed in the fuel spending rates, it must be investigated to find out the causes and take the necessary procedures to address them.

.5.3.49 The employee who uses the fuel spending card is responsible for preserving the card from loss and damage, and guarantees the value of any unauthorized use of the card, and the penalties stipulated in the civil service regulations and legislation shall be applied in case it is proved that he has used the card for unauthorized purposes.

Providing the government vehicles for external bodies

.5.3.50 The authorities or missions of the government authority working outside the Kingdom of Bahrain shall be subject to the provisions and procedures specified in this system to control the government vehicles that provided by them, whenever possible.

.5.3.51 The external authority is responsible for insurance, examination and periodic registration of its vehicles in accordance with the laws and regulations of the country in which it works, and the chairman of the authority or mission or his representative is responsible for messaging the official authorities abroad in all matters related to the government vehicles of the authority or mission.

Government offices

.5.3.52 This section defines the spending controls related to providing, equipping and maintaining of government offices designated for administrative purposes.

.5.3.53 The provisions of this section shall apply to new contracts and upon renewal of lease contracts and maintenance contracts for government offices after the end of their validity period, or upon replacement of fixed assets belonging to them, and its application does not entail any obligation to replace furniture and office equipment, change the current office spaces, or terminate or amend existing contracts for the rental of buildings or car parks if their specifications or conditions differ from what are specified in this section.

Providing government offices

.5.3.54 The government authority must evaluate the options listed below and select the most appropriate option in terms of the lowest cost, in order to provide the required spaces to occupy them as government offices:

A. Redesigning the existing offices with the aim of reducing their spaces to accommodate the additional required uses.

B. Allocating areas of state-owned real estate.

C. Constructing a building on land owned by the state through partnership contracts or financing lease that end to own the property.

D. Lease a building or floors from the private sector.

E. Acquisition of the property for public benefit purposes.

.5.3.55 Government authorities may use other methods of providing government offices other than those specified in this section, provided that they are approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.5.3.56 The government authority shall coordinate with the Government Property Affairs Directorate in the case that the option of providing government offices is approved by allocating areas of state-owned real estate or constructing a building on state-owned land or acquisition the property for public benefit purposes.

.5.3.57 The government authority must obtain the approval of the Projects Directorate before adopting any mechanism for providing government offices to be financed from the projects budget.

.5.3.58 The average monthly rent for government office lease contracts or the car parks for its employees must not exceed the limits shown in the following table, based on the current number of employees in the government authority, or based on the government authority's future employment plan, as approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, provided that the number on the basis of which the rent is calculated does not exceed in all cases the job ceiling specified for the government authority:

Types	Average Monthly Rentals
Lease Government Offices	BHD 107 per employee
Lease Car Parking Lots	BHD 50 per employee

.5.3.59 Government authorities are not allowed to carry the costs of car parking fees on behalf of clients.

.5.3.60 Upon the expiry of the current lease contracts, the government authorities negotiate with the property owners in order to reduce the rent to the limits set forth in this section, and discuss other appropriate options to find an alternative property in case that the contractor does not reduce the rental prices within the rates specified in the mentioned table.

Designing of government offices

.5.3.61 The government authority must obtain the prior approval of the Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning before approving a design scheme or redesigning government offices if the estimated cost of the associated works exceeds an amount of 25,000 dinars, provided that the approval request is submitted within a period not less than 90 days from the date of the tender.

.5.3.62 Taking into consideration the needs of top management offices in the government authority, the buildings designated for administrative purposes must be designed so the spaces that will be used as offices for employees are open and not divided into rooms or apartments separated by fixed walls or divisions, which allows optimal utilization of space and reduces waste of government resources and brings flexibility in re-design.

.5.3.63 Taking into consideration work requirements, utilities should not be allocated to specific offices or directorates when they can be used jointly by more than one office or directorate.

.5.3.64 There must be a commitment not to contract to construct, purchase or lease government offices with spaces that exceed the ceilings specified in the following table:

Job level of office user	Office Space[1] (m^2)	
Minister	85	
Undersecretary	60	
Assistant Undersecretary	50	
Director	25	
Chief of Section	20	
Head of Group	16	
Less than the Head of the Group	4	Open Office
	10	Close Office

Furniture

.5.3.65 Government offices are prepared based on the actual need required by the nature of the government authority's work. It is not permissible to purchase quantities of furniture and office equipment for the purpose of storing them for future uses.

.5.3.66 Government authorities should consider reusing existing office equipment and furniture to equip new offices before looking for other options.

[1] The spacing includes office facilities

.5.3.67 It is not permissible to dispose and replace furniture and office supplies for government authorities:

A. Before the end of its useful life; and

B. If the asset is still in a condition that allows it to be reused.

.5.3.68 When equipping and furnishing government offices, the type and maximum permissible price of furniture according to the job level of the office occupant must be adhered to:

Price Limits for Government Office Furniture (BHD)										
	Paint or wallpaper (per meter)	Curtains (per meter)	Carpets or Parquet (per meter)	Mini Meeting Table Set	Tea Table	File Cabinet	Guest Chairs	Visitors Chair	Office & Side Table	Office Chair
Minister	20	40	18	1500	200	500	1800	160	2000	400
Undersecretary	15	30	15	1200	150	400	1500	150	1800	350
Assistant Undersecretary	15	25	15	1000	120	350	1000	140	1500	300
Director	12	20	10	800	100	300	700	100	850	250
Chief of Section	10	14	8	-	50	200	300	80	300	180
Head of Group	10	14	6	-	45	160	-	80	220	120
Less than Head of Group	10	14	6	-	30	120	-	70	180	100

.5.3.69 Subject to the terms, conditions and maximum limits of prices specified in this section, the competent authority in the government authority shall issue a regulatory decision to determine the following:

A. The number and type of furniture that is allocated to the offices of employees.

B. Colours and shapes of furniture and decor fixtures, taking into consideration uniformity and consistency in colour and design.

Difference of organizational structures

.5.3.70 In government authorities whose organizational structures differ from what is specified in this section, the government authority equates the job levels mentioned in its structure with the job levels specified in this section, according to the decree of establishing or organizing the government authority or according to the administrative organization approved by the Civil Service Bureau.

.5.3.71 According to the need, the competent authority in the government authority shall issue a decision that regulates the maximum spaces and prices for equipping offices of jobs' occupants of other categories not specified in this section, such as the jobs of judges, teachers and diplomats, commensurate with to the financial ceilings specified in this section.

Office stationery

.5.3.72 With the exception of the Ministries of Interior and Defence Affairs and the independent and attached government authorities, government authorities must adhere to using the unified government identity logo when preparing and printing all types of government publications, and it is not permissible to use any other logos that symbolize the identity of the government authority other than what is in this section.

.5.3.73 The ministries must adhere to the specifications and instructions specified in the manual for using the unified identity of each of them, when printing the unified government identity logo on stationery, advertisements, and any other paper or electronic media.

.5.3.74 The government authorities, in coordination with the competent authority at the Ministry of Information Affairs, to obtain the using manual of the unified government identity for each of them, as well as electronic files for fonts and designs, so they can contract with the printing presses to prepare their publications.

.5.3.75 The competent authority at the Ministry of Information Affairs, takes the necessary procedures to amend the identity manual based on the ministries' requests related to designing a new logo, amending the logo, or setting designs for other types of publications.

.5.3.76 Taking into consideration that there is no disbursement except on the basis of need, government authorities must adhere to the limits stipulated in the table below when spending for stationery to employees:

Item	Maximum Quantity allowed per Employee
Maximum stationery provided per employee, which may only be replaced when no longer in usable condition	
Stapler	1
Paper hole puncher	1
Pencil sharpener	1
Ruler	1
Scissors	1
Pen holder	1
Desk tray	1
Calculator	1
Maximum stationery allowed per employee during a fiscal year[2]	
Pen (any colour)	4
Pencil	2
Eraser	1
Blanco	1
Highlighter pen	2
Notepad	2
Sticky notes (pack)	3
Paper clip (pack)	1
Stapler pin (pack)	3
Scotch tape	1

[2] The amounts highlighted in this part of the table relate to the maximum stationary materials that are provided per employee during 1 fiscal year, provided that the employee is not compensated more than once in a year, except in cases of necessity.

.5.3.77 Requests to purchase requirements exceeding the limits set forth in this section shall not be approved unless there are acceptable justifications that require this.

.5.3.78 Government authorities must provide the Central Efficiency Directorate with estimates of spending on office stationery for the fiscal year for approval and submit a request for approval to purchase these materials every three months to cover needs for the next three months.

.5.3.79 Rationalizing disbursement and controlling expenditures related to government publications must be adhered to, in accordance with the following rules:

A. Ensure that government publications specifications fit the requirements of current and future uses.

B. Taking into consideration the conformity of the specifications of government publications with the standards of optimal use of resources and energy conservation whenever possible.

C. Legalize the quantities purchased within the limits of what is required by the actual need to perform the work, and aggregating the annual needs of government publications and set them in a public tender whenever possible, in order to obtain the best prices.

D. Taking into consideration the simplicity in the quality of the selected materials and not exaggerating the formal and technical specifications.

E. The use of multi-usable envelopes that can be opened and re-closed without glue, for internal correspondence in the government authority.

F. Using e-mail for internal correspondence in the government authority instead of paper correspondence whenever possible.

.5.3.80 It is not permissible for government authorities to print any kind of calendars and annual publications in all their kinds.

.5.3.81 Greeting cards may not be printed or purchased, and they can be replaced by using standard electronic congratulatory templates designed internally by the competent directorate in the government authority.

.5.3.82 The authorization of printing personal work cards is limited for use by job levels that are not less than the level of a chief of section, and the personal work card is allowed to be provided to an employee whose job is less than the level of a chief of section if the nature of his work requires this, after the approval of his direct director.

Subscription in newspapers and editions and media platforms

.5.3.83 Subscription to local newspapers is restricted to the job levels of a director or a higher administrative level, as shown below:

Job level	Number allowed to be provided
Undersecretary or higher (Or equivalent)	All local newspapers
Assistant undersecretary, Director (Or equivalent)	3 local newspapers

.5.3.84 It is not allowed to subscribe or renew subscription to non-local newspapers, magazines, exhibitions, news and photo agencies, except after obtaining prior approval supported by acceptable justifications from the Ministry of Information Affairs.

.5.3.85 It is allowed to subscribe in editions if they are related to the nature of the work of the government authority and contribute positively to provide information on professional and scientific developments in specialized fields.

.5.3.86 Subscription to specialized magazines is done on electronic copies if the subscription cost is less than the printed copies, and it allows the participation of more than one user in it without any additional cost.

Travel expenditures

.5.3.87 The provisions and procedures stipulated by the Civil Service Bureau's decisions and instructions regarding travel allowances and tickets which the costs are carried by the government, and other relevant laws and legislations must be adhered to.

.5.3.88 Requests for approval to purchase travel tickets must be submitted to the relevant government authorities within a sufficient period to allow the completion of the procedures related to approvals and procedures for disbursing of tickets and other travel entitlements before the scheduled date of the trip.

.5.3.89 Government authorities may not carry any travel costs other than what is specified in the purchase order / request that has been approved by the concerned government authorities.

Conditions for approval of official participation in abroad

.5.3.90 Government authorities must obtain the approval of the Cabinet for their annual program related to attending conferences and official participations abroad, and it is not allowed to approve the travel of government employees to attend official participations abroad otherwise.

.5.3.91 Coordination must be made with the Kingdom's embassies through the Ministry of Foreign Affairs in the case of participation in activities and external events, wherever possible, and coordination between government authorities to avoid duplication of participation abroad.

.5.3.92 Employees are allowed to send for attending training courses abroad if the required courses are not available in the Kingdom of Bahrain and are not available in a virtual way over the internet.

.5.3.93 Prior approval must be obtained from the Civil Service Bureau for sending employees to attend training workshops outside the Kingdom of Bahrain.

Purchasing of travel tickets and freight

.5.3.94 Government authorities may contact airlines and travel agencies to arrange the ticketing process before the final approval of the purchase order by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, provided that this does not entail any contractual obligations with the supplier, and travel tickets are not issued without an approved purchase order.

.5.3.95 Taking into consideration the obligation to implement the provisions of Law Decree-Law No. (36) of 2002 regarding the organization of government tenders, auctions, purchases and sales, its regulations, and the circulars and decisions of the

Tender Board that regulate the provisions of government procurement when purchasing tickets and bills of lading abroad, the Gulf Air company shall have priority when contracting to purchase travel tickets and bills of lading abroad, except in the cases indicated below:

A. The inappropriateness of the flights available (for tickets) with the company for any of the following reasons:

1. Stopping at a waiting station for a period of three hours or more.

2. Stopping at more than one stop during the trip.

B. The value of the flight ticket or air cargo document on Gulf Air Airlines exceeds the value of the same ticket on other airlines or other travel agencies by more than 20% or 300 dinars.

C. Unavailability of seats on Gulf Air Airlines within the travel classes assigned to the employee according to the civil service legislation and regulations issued.

.5.3.96 Gulf Air Airlines quotes must be obtained from the Gulf Air offices designated for dealing with government authorities or through the official Gulf Air website.

.5.3.97 The government authority must take into consideration the selection of the travel ticket and shipping document which is the lowest price with the appropriate conditions, taking into consideration the terms and conditions specified in this section and in accordance with other legislation issued.

.5.3.98 Government authorities must notify the Central Efficiency Directorate of the availability of any benefits obtained by the government authority that can be used to pay travel expenditures , as they should - if available - and with economic feasibility, be used to pay travel expenditures instead of cash payments.

.5.3.99 The Directorate concerned with procurement affairs in the government authority is responsible for issuing orders to purchase travel tickets and air freight documents to airlines or freight companies, and the employee who benefits from the ticket or shipping document may not interfere in the procurement procedures, such as determining the category or type of ticket, itinerary, airline, etc. Like.

.5.3.100 It is not allowed to lease a private plane to transport a group of passengers (Charter flight), unless the cost of travel is less than the total costs of booking tickets for individual on regular airlines, and subject to obtaining prior approval from the Central Efficiency Directorate regarding this.

.5.3.101 Subject to the availability of adequate budget, a government employee is entitled to:

A. The occupant of an undersecretary, assistant undersecretary, director or higher (or their equivalent), traveling in business class.

B. The occupant of any other job below a director level or his equivalent, traveling in economy class. However, this category can be approved for business class travel on long flights with a one-way which take more than 8 continuous hours.

.5.3.102 The government authority is allowed, in the case the host country provides a travel ticket to an employee that is low class than what he is entitled to travel on according to the legislation issued, may cover the price difference in order to obtain the appropriate air ticket class.

.5.3.103 With the approval of the competent authority in the government authority, it is allowed to issue an additional travel ticket for one companion only of the same class to the ministers or equivalent.

Other travel costs

.5.3.104 The government authority may pay the costs of issuing an employee's entry visa to the country to which he will travel to cover the period necessary to perform the official task assigned to him, and the costs of issuing a multiple-entry visa may be paid in the case that the employee is assigned to attend a task or other future official tasks, or if he is a frequent traveller during the year for more than once according to the nature of his work that requires it, so that the period covered by the visa does not exceed the period necessary for performing the official tasks assigned to him if this entails additional costs.

.5.3.105 Government authorities may not carry the costs of passport renewal fees for employees, unless the employment contract provides otherwise for non-Bahraini employees.

.5.3.106 The travel expenditures of non-Bahraini employees carried by the government authority are subject to the conditions stipulated in the terms of the employment contract concluded with the employee, and the provisions of this section shall be applied to any matters not regulated by that contract.

.5.3.107 An amount of 500 dinars is allowed to be disbursed to cover incidental travel expenditures for those at the level of a minister (or his equivalent) when traveling on an official mission.

.5.3.108 The form "Request for Declaration of Travel Entitlements" no. (2101) is attached when requesting approval for travel to the Central Efficiency Directorate, in addition to any other required attachments.

.5.3.109 The employee must return the travel allowances for the days he did not stay during the travel in case he returns before the period on which these allowances were paid to him.

.5.3.110 Government authorities and directorates which overseeing the disbursement of travel entitlements have the right to request the employee to submit proof of his travel to the intended destination, residence or undertaking the official duties for which he was sent.

.5.3.111 In the case of a claim for compensation for the value of additional travel entitlements or a return of an excess travel allowance as a result of any change in the official mission period, the employee immediately after his return from travel, fills out the form "Request for Declaration of Travel Entitlements" no. (2101), to acknowledge the actual travel expenditures and clarifying the differences between the received and actual amount, and submitting it to the concerned directorate of financial resources in the government authority, attached with a proof of his travel and actual expenditures , and the form shall be approved by the applicant employee and the concerned director of the financial resources in the government authority and sent to the Payments and Collection Directorate to complete the compensation payment procedures or receive the excess amount.

.5.3.112 Government authorities may not cover the costs of any additional services that are not stipulated by civil service regulations or employee contracts (such as using VIP lounges, fast track services, and the like).

.5.3.113 Any claims are submitted by the employee to amend or increase travel expenditures as a change in the purchase order, require approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate on it, provided that the approval request is attached to the

form "Request for Declaration of Travel Entitlements" no. (2101), and all supporting evidence and justifications. The form must be approved by the assistant undersecretary (or equivalent) of the directorate to which the employee belongs.

.5.3.114 Travel entitlements for members of diplomatic missions are disbursed in accordance with decision of the First Deputy Prime Minister no. 31 of the year 2019.

.5.3.115 The employee shall carry any additional costs resulting from any of the following cases, and he shall not be compensated for them:

A. The employee makes modification in the travel reservations that does not comply with the approved purchase order and the issued regulations (such as changing the flight class, hotel room, etc.).

B. Shipping additional baggage, subject to the civil service regulations issued in this regard.

C. Changing or cancellation or replacement of travel ticket for which the reason is the employee, for example: late arrival at the airport.

Travel entitlements for non-government employees

.5.3.116 Travel tickets and other entitlements that are carried by the government authority for the travel of non-government employees are disbursed in accordance with the legislation issued that regulates this, and in the absence of this regulation, the government authority shall coordinate with the Central Efficiency Directorate to determine the rates and rules for disbursing travel entitlements and tickets.

.5.3.117 Travel tickets for non-government employees (such as students or youth delegations representing the Kingdom of Bahrain in international forums) are provided in economy class in accordance with the legislation issued under which government authorities are responsible for providing travel tickets for these groups.

.5.3.118 It is allowed to provide travel tickets for patients whose dispatch approval is issued for treatment abroad with a higher class of travel than the tourist class if their health conditions required that upon the approval of the treatment committee in abroad.

.5.3.119 Business class tickets are allowed to be granted for the guests of the government authority, heads and members of official delegations of regional and international organizations hosted by government authorities, based on the approval of the Cabinet.

The official hospitality

.5.3.120 Official visitors mean official delegations that visit the Kingdom of Bahrain and represent other governments or internationally recognized bodies, such as:

A. Cultural or sports exchange teams that are invited to Bahrain by officials in the government of the Kingdom of Bahrain.

B. Delegations who are invited to conferences, meetings or official government forums hosted by government authorities at their expenditures.

This also includes consultants, experts and employees who are contracted to complete works assigned to them by government authorities.

.5.3.121 For the purposes of this section of the manual, official visitors are classified as follows:

Category	Level of visitor
A	All levels above Director (or equivalent) in the G.C.C. member States.
B	Directors (or equivalent) in Governments and international organizations.
C	Foreign experts and consultants who are appointed to carry out assignments for the government authority.
D	Non-Bahraini employees, where special arrangements must be made for the accommodation at the start of their contract of employment.

.5.3.122 Government authorities must obtain Cabinet approval before hosting international conferences and forums.

.5.3.123 When hosting official visitors, the hosted government authority must do the following:

A. Preparing a detailed program for the visit and informing the Protocols and Conferences Directorate at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the visit details (if needed).

B. Make the necessary reservations for residence and official transportation.

C. Coordinate with the Ministry of Interior to provide security and traffic police services (if required).

.5.3.124 The government authority must provide a welcome letter to the guest, including an explanation of the duration of hosting and the maximum costs of the services allowed, also include in it an explanation that the government authority will not carry the costs of unauthorized services or expenditures that exceed the maximum allowable service costs, and the hotel must be informed of that when the purchase order is delivered to it.

.5.3.125 The official hosting period for visitors should not exceed the period specified by the concerned government authority.

.5.3.126 The government authority must adhere to the levels of hotels and services permitted to be provided for each category of official visitors, as specified in the following table:

Category	Hotel Category	Accommodation Category	International Calls	Maximum limit of transport daily cost (BD)	Maximum limit of services daily cost (BD)
A	5 Star	Suite or double room	Allowed	No limited ceiling	No limited ceiling
B	5 Star	Double room	Allowed	50	40
C	4 Star	Single room	Not Allowed	20	40
D	3 Star	Single room	Not Allowed	18	30

Costs of hospitality of accompanying guests

.5.3.127 If the delegation is headed by a category (A) or (B), then the government authority allows to host the companions with them in the same hotel designated for those groups, regardless of the categories of the companions.

.5.3.128 Official visitors shall carry any additional cost for their accompanying family members, except for Category (A) after the approval of the concerned minister (or his equivalent).

.5.3.129 The government authority allows to host any government employee who is assigned to accompany the visiting guest all the time whenever necessary, such as accompanying the guest by the public relations employee or security guards who are requested from the Ministry of Interior, and the employee accompanying the guest is provided an accommodation in the same hotel, in addition to that providing meals and other services up to a maximum of 40 dinars per day.

.5.3.130 The government authority allows to carry the food expenditures of an employee of any government authority assigned to serve or accompany the guest after official working hours (such as drivers working in the government) with a maximum of 10 dinars per day, or carries the meals expenditures at the guest's residence, when the employee's meal time coincides with the times of his accompanying for the guest.

.5.3.131Cost of meals can be paid from petty cash if they are less than BD 50, or can be paid according to the provisions and procedures of the payment system specified in this manual.

Hospitality for long periods

.5.3.132 Official visitors may not be hosted for a period that exceeds the agreed upon visit period, and in the case that the period needs to be extended due to occurrence of changes that need this, the period may be extended in this case according to the following conditions:

A. The approval of the concerned minister (or his equivalent) to extend the period of hosting visitors of categories (A) and (B) in the same place of residence.

B. The approval of the undersecretary to extend the period of hosting visitors from categories (A) and (B) in the same place of residence for a period not exceeding two weeks, and if there is a need to host these categories for a period of more than two weeks, then government authorities must coordinate with the Ministry of Finance and National Economy:

1. To host them in a guest house, apartments, or furnished homes for weekly or monthly rent.

2. A cash allowance will be paid to the visiting guest, up to a maximum of BD 30 for each day, in case meals and other services are not provided at the place of residence.

Presenting gifts for guests

.5.3.133 Gifts should reflect the arab, islamic and cultural identity of Bahrain and express as much as possible its history, heritage, or the activity of the government authority as much as possible.

.5.3.134 The hosting government authority offers only one gift to the guest or visiting delegation for each official visit, regardless of the number of visits to government authorities during the year.

.5.3.135 The value of the gift should not exceed the following limits:

A. BD 100 for the guest with the level of director or equivalent.

B. BD 200 for the guest with the level of undersecretary or assistant undersecretary or his equivalent.

C. BD 300 for a guest with the level of a minister, chairman of an organization or body, or their equivalent, and for the delegation headed by a director or his equivalent.

D. BD 500 for the delegation headed by an employee of the level of an undersecretary or assistant undersecretary or their equivalent.

E. BD 600 for the delegation headed by an employee of the level of a minister, head of an organization or body, or their equivalent.

.5.3.136 The provisions and procedures mentioned in this section are followed in giving gifts to official bodies outside Bahrain when Bahraini delegations and missions are on official visits abroad.

.5.3.137 It is not allowed for government authorities to keep an inventory of gifts, and gifts are not allowed to be purchased except in time of need to present them to official guests or visitors.

.5.3.138 The government authority shall attach the documents that prove the following, upon submitting the request for approval of purchase requisition related to provide gifts:

A. A copy of the official invitation of the visiting guest.

B. The name and position of the person or the visiting delegation.

C. The country that the guest is represented.

D. The date of the visit.

Spending of rewards

Rewards for trainees' students in government authorities

.5.3.139 The government authority may spend a monthly reward of BD 100 for a period not exceeding four months for university and institute students when they are trained in the government authority, provided that the student submits a letter from the university stating the need to implement the training program.

.5.3.140 Reward payment is discontinued or reduced if the student does not meet the minimum training requirements.

.5.3.141 To pay the rewards for trainees in government authorities, the government authority submits a request for purchase approval to the Central Efficiency Directorate with the following data attached:

A. Student information.

B. Details of the training program.

C. A letter from the educational institution regarding the need for training.

D. Any payments made prior to submitting the application.

Rewards for collaborators and volunteers

.5.3.142 Government authorities must set regulations and conditions for entitlement and payment of rewards for those collaborating in organizing the events of the authorities, as a minimum:

A. Conclude contracts with them according to the contract templates set by the Civil Service Bureau, and submit the contracts to the mentioned bureau for approval, provided that these contracts include the following:

1. Criteria for evaluating the work of collaborators and the basis for disbursing their wages.

2. The appropriate wage amounts for the collaborators.

B. Ensure that they complete the tasks assigned to them according to the contracts signed with them.

C. Keeping records prove that wages paid to collaborators.

.5.3.143 Rewards or gifts in kind or cash are allowed to be granted to individuals and local establishments officially registered as an appreciation or encouragement to them for the accomplishments or activities they have provided in the service of society, provided that the value of the reward or gift does not exceed BD 250 per person, and BD 500 to local establishments, provided that they are not repeatedly disbursed for the same person or establishment more than once every three years.

Reward of Annuity Purchase

.5.3.144 The government authority must initiate the procedures related to granting the reward of purchasing of virtual service years at an early date to enable completion of the required procedures.

.5.3.145 The Social Insurance Organization is responsible for issuing a detailed circular for the method of calculating the actual costs involved in purchasing the virtual service years.

.5.3.146 Government authorities are obligated to cover all costs involved in paying the reward of purchasing the virtual service years from the item specified in their approved budget for manpower expenditures.

.5.3.147 Government authorities must obtain approval from the Budget Directorate at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy that adequate funds are available in their budgets to cover the cost of purchasing the virtual service years.

.5.3.148 The costs of the reward for the annuity purchase are charged to the item “Annuity Purchase” of Chapter One of the Public budget.

.5.3.149 The employee who is entitled to the reward and purchased the virtual service years from his own budget shall be compensated within the limits of the period due to him based on the reward of purchasing the virtual service years that the government authority decides to grant him, and with the same value that he paid to the Social Insurance Organization, and he is not compensated for the period exceeding that if the years he purchased exceed the years that the government authority decided to purchase for him.

The reward spending procedures

.5.3.150 The reward for purchasing the virtual service years is disbursed to the eligible employee according to the following procedures:

A. The financial resources director in the government authority prepares the form “Request for Annuity Purchase” no. (1401) and sends it to the Social Insurance Organization.

B. After receiving the request approval from the Social Insurance Organization, the government authority issues a purchase order to reserve the amount.

C. The government authority sends the form attached to the purchase order received from the Budget Directorate, and a list of disciplinary sanctions for the employee, if any, to the Civil Service Bureau for a decision.

D. In the case that the request is approved, the government authority shall inform the Payments and Collection Directorate to pass the payments related to the disbursement of the employee's virtual service years reward.

.5.3.151 All employees honoring events must take place inside government buildings.

Advertisements

.5.3.152 Government authorities use their official websites to publish their advertisements whenever possible.

.5.3.153 Publication of government advertisements is limited to the purposes specified below only, and government authorities are not allowed to carry the costs of publishing any other advertisements such as condolences, thanks and congratulations, and any other advertisements that are not related to the nature of the work or activity of the government authority, whether for public or private events:

A. Public official advertisements related to the nature of the government authority's work, such as advertising for tenders, auctions and public services advertisements.

B. Awareness media campaigns.

C. Condolence of government employee working at the government authority upon his death.

.5.3.154 The following conditions must be adhered when publishing the government advertisement in local newspapers:

A. To be limited to two newspapers as a maximum.

B. It is published on the internal pages of the newspaper only.

C. Not to exceed a quarter of a page and without colors.

.5.3.155 Prior approval must be obtained from the Ministry of Information Affairs and other concerned government authorities when it is necessary to use road billboards as methods for advertising of promotional or awareness programs.

.5.3.156 Government authorities are allowed to use billboards that are installed in the roads for advertising of national events and awareness campaigns, provided that they do not exceed two billboards for each national event. For awareness campaigns, the number of billboards is allowed to be increased to achieve the goals of those campaigns.

Programs and devices of Information technology

.5.3.157 Government authorities must obtain prior approval from the Information and eGovernment Authority for purchases related to IT programs or devices, in accordance with the controls and procedures issued by this authority, regarding the regulation of types and limits of amounts that require prior approval for purchase.

Subscriptions in international organizations

Introduction

According to pertinence of the Kingdom of Bahrain to the Arab and international families, this has resulted that the Kingdom of Bahrain joining many regional and international bodies and organizations which strive to support ties and develop political, economic and cultural relations among its member states in a way that achieves the common benefit of these countries at the regional and international levels. This subsection regulates the control procedures over the payment of subscriptions in these organizations.

General Provisions

.5.3.158 The Kingdom of Bahrain joining any of the regional and international bodies and organizations, increasing the share of subscription with them, as well as the projects and programs implemented through them are subject to the prior approval of the Cabinet.

.5.3.159 The payment or renewal of any contributions and voluntary subscription in regional and international organizations and bodies must be stopped.

.5.3.160 The International Relations Directorate is responsible for authorizing all requests for payment of subscriptions to regional and international organizations and bodies, as well as projects and programs that are implemented through them after the concerned government authority obtains the approval from the Cabinet to join.

.5.3.161 The International Relations Directorate must be informed in the case that the concerned government authority obtains any support from the organization or the body in which it subscribes, whether in the form of financial or in-kind subsidy.

Payment of contributions to the League of Arab States and its affiliated bodies and organizations

.5.3.162 The share of the Kingdom of Bahrain in the budget of the Arab League and its affiliated organizations and bodies should not exceed 2%, based on the memorandum of understanding signed between the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and the General Secretariat of the League of Arab States.

.5.3.163 Before paying subscriptions to the budget of the Arab League and its affiliated organizations and bodies, it must be ensured that at least 50% of the number of member states have paid their subscriptions to the mentioned bodies.

.5.3.164 The subscriptions shall be paid for Arab organizations to the unified account of the Arab Monetary Fund in accordance with the decision of the Economic and Social Council affiliated to the General Secretariat of the League of Arab States.

Procedures for paying contributions

.5.3.165 Subscriptions to international organizations and bodies are paid by the following procedures:

A. After ensuring that the adequate funds are available to pay the subscriptions, the government authority issues a purchase order through the Central Financial System and attaches the organization's letter and other relevant attachments.

B. In the case of an increase in the required subscription fees, the government authority must attach justifications for the increase in the subscription fees when submitting the request for approval of purchase.

C. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy does the following:

1. Review the request and ensure that the concerned government authority obtains the approval of the Cabinet for the subscription of the Kingdom of Bahrain in the relevant international organization, or to increase the share of subscriptions with it, or to implement projects and programs with this organization.

2. Ensure the validity of the period covered by the subscription.

3. Ensure compliance with the terms and conditions specified by the organization to which subscriptions will be paid.

4. Upon approval of the request, a number is allocated to the request and the details of the request are recorded in subscriptions register for international organizations and bodies at the International Relations Directorate.

5. In the case that the request does not meet the specified conditions, the Ministry of Finance and National Economy will either reject the request or request the concerned government authority to complete the required procedures.

6. In case the request is approved, the government authority issues the purchase order, and after reviewing and approval of the Central Efficiency Directorate, it will be transferred to the Payments and Collection Directorate for payment.

7. The Payments and Collection Directorate reviews the payment request for abroad in light of the approval of the International Relations Directorate, and complete the payment procedures, and deliver the method of payment to the concerned government authority.

Disbursement of social assistance by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development

.5.3.166 This subsection covers the financial provisions and procedures related to the cash payment of social assistance that is decided to be disbursed by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development to eligible families and individuals in accordance with the provisions of laws and decisions issued in this regard, with the exception of social security assistance stipulated in Law No. (18) of 2006 regarding the social security.

Responsibilities of the Ministry of Labor and Social Development:

.5.3.167 The Ministry of Labor and Social Development undertakes the following tasks and procedures to control the process of social assistance disbursement:

A. Forming a permanent committee or more as needed from at least three members to be selected from the employees of the relevant sections, by a decision issued from the Undersecretary of the Ministry of Labor and Social Development, and it is responsible for reviewing the requests of assistance and approving the amount of assistance.

B. Issuing the necessary decisions to determine the types of social assistance, the conditions and criteria for their disbursement, and the amounts approved for each category of beneficiaries, in accordance with the legal legislations issued in this regard.

C. Study the beneficiaries cases from assistance, and make the necessary adjustments of the granted assistance.

D. Assigning a number to each case eligible for assistance, and this number is used as a reference in all forms and documents related to social assistance, and it is not allowed to reuse the beneficiary's case number for another case.

E. Assigning a permanent file to each beneficiary from assistance in which his data are kept, copies of the documents and supported documents for granting the assistance, and copies of the reports that are prepared about the applicant.

F. Maintaining a separate record for each type of assistance, including the personal number data and the names of the beneficiaries from assistance, the amounts approved for each beneficiary, and the bank accounts data of the beneficiaries or their presentative, taking into consideration updating the records and documents related to the assistance.

G. Periodically updating the data of cases benefiting from social assistance by sending declarations to the beneficiaries of such assistance to request updating the data or conducting field visits, according to the circumstances of each case.

H. Commitment to disburse the assistance within the limits of the annual appropriations allocated within the budget.

Procedures for receiving and deciding on requests of assistance:

.5.3.168 The processing of requests to obtain the social assistance is done by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development, according to the following procedures:

A. The request for assistance is submitted to the concerned directorate using the form designated for each type of assistance, provided that the request is supported by the required documents and data.

B. Review the received request and ensure that it meets the specified conditions and criteria, and availability of the required documents and data.

C. Conducting a field visit - whenever needed - and making a report about the applicant's situation, provided that the report includes a full statement and description of the applicant's living and social situation.

D. Checking the data contained in the report and the attached documents to it and comparing it with the database of the Information and e-Government Authority and any other relevant authorities, in order to ensure the correctness of the submitted data.

E. Deciding on requests based on the results of the report, and then informing the applicant of the committee's decision.

F. Adding the data of the applicant who is approved to be granted assistance to the assistance register.

Adjustment and discontinuation of assistance:

.5.3.169 The procedures specified must be applied when adjusting the amount of assistance.

.5.3.170 The amount of the assistance must be adjusted or stopped if reasons arise to do so.

.5.3.171 The beneficiary shall be entitled to the stopped amounts retroactively for a period not exceeding three consecutive months from the stop, and his right to that shall forfeit after the expiry of the mentioned period, unless the Minister of Labor and Social Development decides otherwise.

.5.3.172 The Payments and Collection Directorate shall notify the Ministry of Labor and Social Development of the returned amounts statements to be adjusted according to each case.

The financial procedures for expending social assistance:

.5.3.173 The Ministry of Labor and Social Development undertakes the following procedures for expending social assistance:

A. Prepare the following monthly statements for each bank separately:

1. The monthly assistance statement (Form 2), including the data of beneficiaries' names, the case number of each beneficiary, their account numbers, the amount owed for each beneficiary, and storing the statement data in any appropriate electronic storage method.

2. A statement of the monthly adjustments and reconciliations (Form 3).

3. A statement of assistance for new cases (Form 4).

4. A statement of adjustments for the amounts of beneficiaries (Form 5).

5. The transfer statement from a bank account (Form 6).

6. The transfer statement to a bank account (Form 7).

B. Review the lists of nominations from the competent committee for new cases and the amendments of other cases.

C. Review the monthly expending statements and documents for assistance payments, including:

1. Reviewing the new or over-amended assistance data with the lists of nominations and amendments.

2. Ensure the availability of statements and documents which are supported for disbursement.

3. Review the transferred assistance from a bank account to another with the transfer requests issued by their owners.

4. Matching the payments of the current month with the data of the elapsed month payments, and the data of new assistance statements, amended and cancelled, and data of transferred amounts from a bank account to another.

5. Ensure the availability of necessary appropriations to pay the due monthly payments.

D. Coordination with the Payments and Collection Directorate regarding the follow-up of invoices preparation in the Central Financial System.

E. Entering the invoices related to social assistance in the Central Financial System.

.5.3.174 The Payments and Collection Directorate undertakes the following procedures for expending the social assistance:

A. Reviewing and approving the invoices in the Central Financial System after matching the amounts with the statements attached to the payment request.

B. Transfer the amounts of social assistance to the bank accounts of the beneficiaries electronically through the bank. The amount of assistance is allowed to be paid to the guardian of the beneficiary, or to a presentative specified by the beneficiary, under an official authorization documented by the Ministry of Labor and Social Development (Form 1), provided that it is in accordance with the following conditions:

    1. That the applicant is (incapacitated, or his bank accounts were seized by judicial order).

    2. It must be based on the applicant's desire or his relatives, in case the applicant is proven to be incompetent.

    3. The entrusted person must be a Bahraini nationality holder.

.5.4 Annexures

Annexure 1 – Detailed Annual Spending Plan Template

Government Entity	
Directorate	

Item	**Total**
Recurrent Expenditure Budget	
Total Recurrent Expenditure	
Number of Employees	
Number of New Recruits till end of Fiscal Year	

Budget Item	Description	Quantity	Estimated Cost	Method of Purchase	Required Date	Previous Year Expenditure
Budget Item						
Gas						
Gas for laboratory and office use						
Gas for electricity generation						
Gas to operate water stations						
Gas for other uses						

Budget Item	Description	Quantity	Estimated Cost	Method of Purchase	Required Date	Previous Year Expenditure
Fuel and lubrication materials						
Fuel and oils for electrical generators						
Fuel and oils for cars and heavy machinery						
Lubricating material						
Aircraft fuel and oil						
Fuel and oils for ships						
Other fuel and oils						
Goods, supplies, materials and tools						
Clothing and food for non-staff						
Non-staff food (not stored)						
Insecticides and insect extermination chemicals						
Chemical compounds and insect extermination (not stored)						
A variety of light tools						

Budget Item	Description	Quantity	Estimated Cost	Method of Purchase	Required Date	Previous Year Expenditure
Supply and other costs						
Miscellaneous expenses						
Social activities sponsors						
The rate of difference in profit and loss						
Price spreads						
Metal plates						
Costs of purchasing waste bags						
Gifts in kind to employees upon the end of the career service						
Costs of supplying drinking water						
Costs of supplying desalinated water for irrigation						
The cost of purchasing animal feed and food						
Excluding consumer inventory						

Budget Item	Description	Quantity	Estimated Cost	Method of Purchase	Required Date	Previous Year Expenditure
Military expenditures						
Stock cost adjustment						
Cost of goods sold						
Stationary Publications and Tools						
Stationary tools						
Printing and photocopying materials						
ID card issuance costs						
Purchasing books						
Educational material						
Maps and posters						
Medicines and medical supplies						
Drugs and medicines						
Medical and surgical materials						
Radiology materials						
Laboratory Materials						

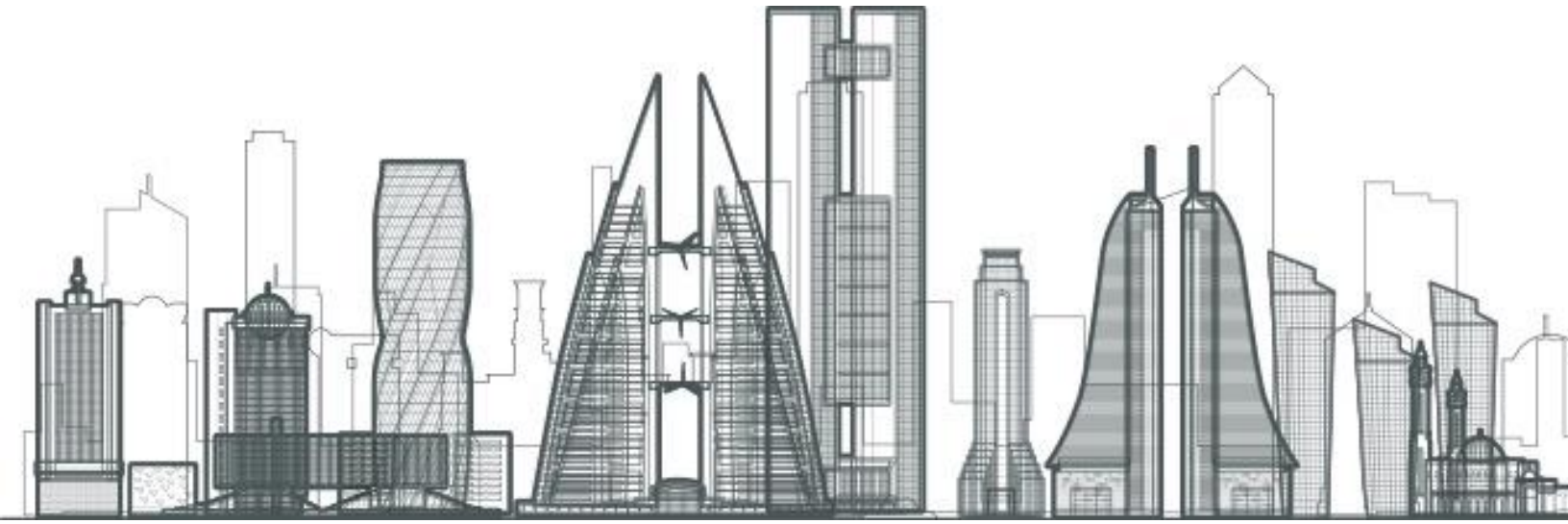
Budget Item	Description	Quantity	Estimated Cost	Method of Purchase	Required Date	Previous Year Expenditure
Drugs and medicines (not stored)						
Medical and surgical materials (not stored)						
Radiology materials (not stored)						
Laboratory material (not stored)						
Information program costs						
Advertising programs						
Educational programs						
TV Shows						
Control budget accounts						
Chemical compounds and insect extermination						
Drugs and medicines						
Other expenses **IT expenditures**						
Total						

Annexure 2 – Government Authorities Reporting to the Shared Services Section for Recurrent Expenditure

No.	Government Authority
1.	Bahrain Authority for Culture & Antiquities
2.	Bahrain Institute for Political Development
3.	Bahrain Institute of Public Administration
4.	Bahrain Internet Exchange
5.	Bahrain Polytechnic
6.	Bahrain Teachers College
7.	Capital Municipality
8.	Civil Service Bureau
9.	Education & Quality Training Authority
10.	General Secretariat of the Cabinet
11.	Information and eGovernment Authority
12.	Legislation and Legal Opinion Commission
13.	Ministry of Education
14.	Ministry of Finance and National Economy
15.	Ministry of Follow-Up Affairs
16.	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
17.	Ministry of Health
18.	Ministry of Housing Services
19.	Ministry of Industry, Commerce and Tourism
20.	Ministry of Information Affairs
21.	Ministry of Justice, Islamic Affairs and Waqf
22.	Ministry of Labour & Social Development
23.	Ministry of Shura Council & Representatives Council Affairs
24.	Ministry of Transportation & Telecommunications

No.	Government Authority
25.	Ministry of Works, Municipality Affairs & Urban Planning
26.	Ministry of Youth & Sports Affairs
27.	Muharraq Municipality
28.	National Bureau for Revenue
29.	National Communications Center
30.	National Health Regulatory Authority
31.	National Oil & Gas Authority
32.	National Space Science Agency
33.	Northern Area Municipality
34.	Real Estate Regulatory Authority
35.	Southern Area Municipality
36.	Supreme Council for Environment
37.	Supreme Council for Health
38.	Supreme Council for Islamic Affairs
39.	Supreme Council for Youth and Sports
40.	Survey & Land Registration Bureau
41.	Sustainable Energy Authority
42.	Tender Board
43.	University of Bahrain

6. Project Expenditure



Section summary and responsibilities	
General description of the section	This section covers the general policies related to the control of government entity's projects expenditures.
Directorates supervising the section operations	Project Funding Directorate - Overseeing the project budget estimation and implementation process.

6.1. Introduction and general provisions

.6.1.1 The provisions and procedures mentioned in the budget section and the recurring expenditures section shall be applied to the financial transactions related to project expenditures in a manner that does not contradict the provisions and procedures mentioned in this section.

Operations related to project expenditures in general

.6.1.2 An expenditure is classified as a project expense under Chapter 8 of the budget if it meets the following criteria, all other expenditure not meeting the above definition must be treated as recurrent expenditure.

1.Has a defined beginning and end date to the delivery of the final output that is specified by a defined scope

2.The final output is unique and is not readily available in the final shape and form in the market

3.The final output is delivered in a unique and non-routine method that follows a specific set of operations designed to accomplish a singular outcome.

4.Has a dedicated Project Coordinator and supported by a team, when required.

5.In cases where there is an asset, the related work leads to an enhancement of the asset's life. As such, maintenance related work is not considered as a project unless the related work will lead to the enhancement of the asset. Enhancement refers to the:

a. Extension in the life of the asset; and

b. Improved performance of the asset; and

c. Greater economic benefit generated from the asset.

d. The change in the depreciation value as a result of reviewing the useful life of the asset.

6.1.3 No elements of recurrent expenditure can be booked against a project code unless it is an integral part of the project and the continuation of the project depends on the expense (e.g. contracted labour).

6.1.4 Each project must have a unique code defined for it. No project may commence unless a code is created and assigned to it. All expenditure and other activities related to a project must be booked against the code and contain the following information at a minimum:

1. The Government Entity to which the project belongs to;

2. Number of sub-activities in the project;

3. Cumulative expenditure till date (by period by activity);

4. Project cash requirements (by period by activity); and

5. Commitments – cumulative expenditure remaining to be incurred (by period by activity).

6.1.5 Each project must have an assigned Directorate within the Client/Requesting Government Entity to coordinate on the matters of the project throughout the project life. The assigned Directorate shall be referred to as the Project Coordinator.

.6.1.6 Their responsibility is to manage the overall project, which includes the management of scope, cost, cash flows, time, resources, procurement, quality, risk, communications and stakeholders. The Project Coordinator must always ensure that projects are delivered:

1. As per a specified quality
2. Within scheduled time frame
3. Within the agreed upon cost of delivery
4. As per the scheduled cash flow

.6.1.7 Project Coordinator must ensure that any deviation to the cost, time or quality of a project is well communicated, always documented and authorized by the relevant authority.

.6.1.8 Depending on the circumstances and the requirements of the project, the following prior approvals must be obtained for projects:

1. The ICTB before undertaking any type of works on electronic and IT related software and hardware.
2. The CSB before including any contracted labour on the project.
3. The Government Properties Affairs Directorate for the usage of land for temporary or permanent usage.

4. Other entities and Government Authorities.

.6.1.9 Where projects are related to assets, all Government Entities are required to update the fixed asset register (FAR) with the work in progress (WIP) and completed asset information.

.6.1.10 Projects can comprise of different type of works performed, which can be anyone or a combination of the following types:

1. **Construction** – any building, civil engineering or other engineering work conducted on buildings, infrastructure or other areas, which includes an extensive list of elements that are structures in a defined space. (e.g. housing projects, furniture, etc.).
2. **Development** –are long-term development projects that, by their nature, require initial funding to lay the foundations for work necessary to start the project, such as: information technology projects.
3. **Planning Proposals** – Expenditure on surveys and research, including feasibility studies, which cannot be funded from the recurrent budget but is necessary to identify and define term plans and programs into specific projects.
4. **Other Projects** – all other project types not meeting the above descriptions.

6.1.11. The provisions of Decree-Law No. (36) of 2002 regarding the regulation of government tenders, auctions, purchases and sales, and its executive regulations, circulars, decisions and instructions of the Tender and Auctions Board that regulate the provisions of government procurement must be adhered to in all stages of procurement and contracting for the implementation of projects.

6.2. Initial approval for a new project

General Provisions

.6.2.1 The initial inception of a project may arise in any of the following ways:

1. From planned implementation of Government or Ministerial policy to achieve long term goals, general or sectoral economic plans or interim objectives;
2. From the identification of a specific need falling within the scope of the concerned Government Entity;
3. From the recognition of a particular investment opportunity; or
4. As a result of a project or program proposed or in progress within another Government Entities, private company or international agreement.

6.2.2. Before embarking on the implementation of any project, the government entity must obtain the initial approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy to include it in the development plan.

Preliminary study for the proposed project

.6.2.3The Client/Requesting Government Entity, upon identifying the need for a new project, prepares an initial high-level study capturing the essential details and feasibility of the project, which includes the following information, as applicable:

a. Project Details:

1. Client Government Entity
2. Supervising Government Entity
3. Project Description
4. Project Objectives
5. Justification for the Project

6. Government program and initiatives which the project follows

7. Project location (governorate)

b. Studies carried out for the project:

1. Type of studies carried out

2. Agency which made the study

3. Date of latest study

c. List of studies enclosed:

1.Technical Feasibility Studies

2.Financial/Economic Feasibility [quantitative metrics]

3. Environmental Studies

4. Condition assessment report, where required

d. Specific Project Data:

1. Scope of work;

2.Nature of Project (New/Extension/Renovation)

e. If extension or Renovation:

1. Completion date of original project

2. Final cost of original project

3. Related on-going project (if any)

4. Proposed Project Commencement

5. Proposed Project period

6. Expected stages of project implementation and the milestones to be achieved

7. Proposed Location (both temporary and permanent land usage requirements must be highlighted in the study)

f. Is land available (yes/no) ,If land is required (specify):

1. Government owned

2. Privately owned

3. Leased/rented/reclaimed

4. Land area

5. Built-up area

g. Estimated Capital Costs

1. Basis of estimate

2. Total cost (with details)

3. Unit Cost

4.VAT inclusive (yes/no) or any other VAT or compensation

h. Estimated Recurrent Costs [both during and post the lifetime of the project]

1. Operating cost (per annum)

2. Maintenance cost (per annum)

3. VAT inclusive (yes/no)

i. Benefits of the Project

1. Potential Revenue

2. Basis for estimate of revenue

j. Nature/No. of jobs generated:

1. Local

2. Foreign

k. Quantified Economic Benefits / Social costs and benefits / Technical benefits

l. Impact on environment (if applicable)

m.Risks and risk assessment

n.Legal requirements

o. Source(s) of Project Funding

1. Government funds

2. Soft loans from regional institutions

3.Export Credit Agencies

4.Commercial Loan

5.Partnership with private sector

6. other sources

.6.2.4 The above study is prepared in the Client/Requesting Government Entity in coordination with the responsible directorates. In cases where the Implementing /Supporting Government Entity is separate from the Client /Requesting Government Entity, the above study may be performed jointly, or by a specialist.

.6.2.5 Upon preparation, the Client/Requesting Government Entity forwards the project request along with initial study report to MOFNE.

a. The Projects Financing Directorate receives the request for a new project and checks the project request against the following:

1.Funding availability – if the project request does not meet fund availability criteria, the request is deferred.

2.Approved project list - in addition to the budget availability check the Projects Financing Directorate ensures that the request type meets the approved list of projects planned for by the Client/Requesting Government Entity. If the project request does not meet the approved project list criteria, the request is deferred. The Client/Requesting Government Entity may raise a request for amending the annual plan to add the project to the approved list.

b. The PRPD shall review and provide insights on any potential revenues generated.

C. If the above two parameters are met, and are consistent with current priorities, the Projects Financing Directorate will contact the Client/Requesting Government Entity through official means notifying them of the initial approval.

d. The initial approval maybe granted only for projects that have justifications and an actual need for implementations.

.6.2.6Approval in principle and inclusion in the forward plan does not in itself authorize or guarantee to incur liabilities in the same year of inclusion. The reason

for this is that a proposed project may be entered in the Forward Plan at estimated prices several years before the commencement of the project.

.6.2.7The Projects Financing Directorate must therefore reserve the right to review all projects prior to commencement of different phases considering:

1.Improved cost estimates following detailed design work and general price inflation3;

2.Changes in the economic climate since approval in principle; and

3.Changes in priorities resulting from urgent new requirements and slippage in the rate of expenditure on projects in progress.

.6.2.8 Each project included in the forward plan must be defined by a unique code and have a budget allocated to it. The budget reserved should consider and include the following when deemed necessary:

1.Up to 5% contingency for each contract under the project;

2.Up to 5% contingency for the overall project; and

3.A budget of 2% of total contracted labour allocated for social insurance purposes.

.6.2.9 Projects may be initiated (and project related expenditure and commitments may be incurred) only post obtaining prior approval from the Projects Financing Directorate. All Project expenditure should necessarily be mapped to a commitment for which prior approval has been obtained.

.6.2.10 Budget amendment procedures to be adopted in case insufficient budget is available for a project or its related expenditure.

.6.2.11 All proposals for initiating a project must be approved in accordance with the approved approval limits.

.6.2.12 Project Coordinator's from the Client/Requesting Government Entity are responsible for clearly defining the scope of the project and the requirement. This is to prevent any issues from arising during the delivery phase.

[3] The PRPD to provide comments and feedback on estimated income for projects with a planned stream of income. The review to be part of the MOFNE review.

.6.2.13 In such cases where a project involves several Government Entities, coordination is required for the smooth and timely execution of the project at all stages of the project.

Detailed study of the Project

.6.2.14 Based on the requirement of the Projects Financing Directorate, the Client/Requesting Government Entity carries out a detailed project evaluation. The information is required for an update of assumptions and information presented in the initial studies and further insights. As applicable, the following shall be submitted as part of the detailed review, in addition to the requirements listed above:

1.A statement of the main options available against desired objectives including advantages and disadvantages of each and reasoning for choice of proposed project.

2.A general description of the project including the products, size or quantity or capacity and unit size, inputs and outputs, quality of product, process descriptions, any outline drawings and all basic assumptions and design parameters.

3.Data and results of previous similar projects including the year of completion.

4.A description of any related project or associated work by all other Government Entities (e.g. Public Works Affairs).

5.A cost estimate for associated works by any other Government Entity as a result of this project.

6.A cost estimate of probable recurrent costs for operation, maintenance and employees per MOFNE account code breakdown as far as possible.

7.Possible implications of the project on the future recurrent expenditures of the Client/Requesting Government Entity, and any other Government entity.

8.Statement of anticipated changes to Government manpower requirements analyzed by provisional grading and local or foreign employment, both for project implementation and for the management, operation and maintenance of the facilities to be introduced as a result of this project.

9.A market analysis including analysis of demand or need and supply, and pricing and sales strategy as appropriate or relevant.

10.Estimated revenue with associated unit prices, if any.

11.A financial analysis where appropriate including financial rate of return.

12.An Economic and Social Cost Benefit Analysis.

13.The planned implementation timescale for the project in the form of a network plan of key project elements.

14.The in principle/initial approval/agreement of any relevant Government Entity and applicable permits where required by the laws and regulations of Government such as compliance with building regulations, availability of land, licensing and registration, application for utility supplies, etc.

15.A description and quantification of all resources utilization by Sector and Projects Financing Directorate sectoral breakdown, and corresponding planning considerations, e.g. for employment, costs and benefits and number of employees by foreign and local both during construction and after completion, effect on income levels, etc., public health, utilities use, traffic, housing, land and environment, etc.

.6.2.15 The above study is prepared in the Client/Requesting Government Entity in coordination with the responsible department/directorate. In cases where the Implementing/ Supporting Government Entity is separate from the Client/Requesting Government Entity, the above study may be performed jointly, or by a specialist.

.6.2.16 The above listed information is a compulsory submission which will be submitted by the Client/Requesting Government Entity. The above may be submitted in the form of a comprehensive feasibility study, project report or as individual statements.

.6.2.17 The Projects Financing Directorate may waive any of the above requirements according to specific economic sector or project assessment needs.

.6.2.18 The Projects Financing Directorate may call for submission of additional supporting data where required. This will include, but is not limited to, the following:

1.General economic grounds and relevance to specific sectoral objectives and development policies;

2.Possible implications of the project on all economic sectors;

3.Assess the accurateness of the assumptions and estimates used by the Client/Requesting Government Entity;

4.Availability of funds to finance the project and the sources of the fund;

5.Cash flow implications and total expenditure of the period during the delivery phase;

6.Recurrent expenditure implications both during and post completion and delivery of the project; and

7.Determines the most appropriate source/method of funding the project.

Initial approval for a new project

.6.2.19 The detailed study is reviewed by the Projects Financing Directorate and in cases where additional information is required the Client / Requesting Government Entity is requested to revisit the study. Only if the project is deemed feasible shall the Projects Finance Directorate provide recommendations for approval. The recommendations are then forwarded for approval as per applicable approval limits, and required the following:

1. Once the project is accepted by the approval authority is an “In Principle Approval” granted.

2. The Client/Requesting Government Entity initiates the process of filling in the Form MF-1801 and obtains the necessary signatures on the form. All documentation pertaining to the request is attached to the form sent to the Projects Financing Directorate.

3. The Projects Financing Directorate receives the Form MF-1801 and allocates a project account code, with coordinate with the concerned directorate.

Note: The GL code created at this stage is for opening a code at the project level. Any subsequent codes created will be to capture the details of the subsequent contracts related to the project.

4.The Project Finance Department updates the development plan in the central financial system, and fixes the project budget based on the estimated cost of the project.

External funds request:

.6.2.20The Projects Financing Directorate is responsible for identifying the source of financing for the project. The source of funding for a project may be one or a combination of any of the following:

1.Government own funds;

2.Export credit agencies;

3.Regional funding agencies;

4.Commercial banks;

5.Blended combination of the various sources; or

6.Any other source.

.6.2.21The MOFNE is responsible for addressing the funding bodies to request funding for projects approved by Government Entities.

.6.2.222 In cases where the project is to be funded, fully or partially by an external agency, the following processes are performed by MOFNE prior to commencing the procurement and tendering processes:

1.The Projects Financing Directorate in coordination with determin specific agencies that need to be approached for funding.

2.The Funding Agency is approached through official means of communication and the project report and respective documentation are provided to the agency.

3.Upon obtaining the Agency’s feedback, terms of the financing are discussed and negotiated.

4.In coordination with the Legal Advisers, Client/Requesting Government Entity, Implementing/Supervising Government Entity, Funding Agencies, and state officials, finalize and execute the financing agreement.

5.The Treasury Directorate is coordinated with for the necessary procedures to be followed in relation to the project payment and for receiving disbursements from the various trances of the financing facility.

6.3. Purchase and pre-approval

General Provisions

.6.3.1In addition to the inclusion of a project in the forward plan, Government entities must obtain the following approvals prior to initiating the procurement process for contract related expenditure:

1.Where the estimated cost of the contract is more than BHD 25,000, the approval is obtained from project financing directorate.

2.Where the estimated cost of the contract is equal to or less than BHD 25,000, the contract may be approved in accordance to the Client/Requesting Government Entities internal approval limits. At all times, the floated tender must be in line with the approved project scope of work.

3.In all cases where financing (either fully or partially) is through an external funding agency, the agency's approval and involvement is required throughout the procurement procedure. This is to be in accordance to the contractual terms and conditions.

.6.3.2Consider the approved cash flows for projects within the current budget cycle, so that project cash flows from budgets and commitments are adjusted within the overall approved budget of the Government Entity,

.6.3.3The Projects Financing Directorate reserves the right to follow up on projects that are yet to be tendered to ensure the efficient utilization of funds.

.6.4 Contracting and awarding

General Polices:

.6.4.1 The Client/Requesting Government Entity must have prior approval from the Projects Financing Directorate before awarding any contract to a Contractor. The contract will only be valid if it contains the Purchase Order No. for the particular contract or the approval number.

.6.4.2Prior to entering into any contractual commitment with any Contractor, Government Entities must obtain the feedback and consent of the Projects Finance Directorate to ensure the availability of budget and funding. According to the following:

A.The Client/Requesting Government Entity raises Form MF-1803 and the PO and forwards both to the Projects Financing Directorate. The following should be included as part of the Form MF-1803 submission:

1. PO number

2. Type of contract applicable

3. Contractor's name and details;

4. Priced B.O.Q, showing the VAT amounts;

4. Tender Board approvals; if the contract more than BHD 25,000

B. If the contract was tendered internally between BHD 10,000 and BHD 25,000, the following details must be submitted with Form MF-1803, but not limited to:

1. Tender advertisement

2. Envelopes opening form

3. The approval of the Internal Tenders Committee to award and negotiate if required.

4.Tender documents

5.Bid Evaluation Report

4. Other documents, if required or requested by the Projects Financing Directorate.

C. The Projects Financing Directorate receives and reviews the PO issued and the Form 1803 to ensure the availability of funding, correct budget line items are allocated, approval of the funding agency (if externally funded), etc.

D. In case of any issues, the request is sent back and the Client/Requesting Government Entity to make necessary adjustments.

E. In case of satisfactory review and approval, then the PO is approved. The budget amount is frozen for the project.

F. Once approved, the decision of the Client/Requesting Government Entity is to award the contract to the successful bidder, in accordance with the provisions and procedures regulating government procurement.

G. The Project Coordinator prepares a contract draft and the Client/Requesting Government Entity ensures of the following:

1. The contract type matches the Projects Financing Directorate's recommendation;

2. The approval of the Projects Financing Directorate is obtained; and

3. The approval number, as well as the PO number, are reference in the contract.

H. Apply all the term and conditions in recurrent expenditure section.

.6.5 Project Monitoring

Policies

.6.5.1The procedures under this subsection relate to the ongoing process of monitoring and keeping track of all project-related metrics. This is to ensure that issues regarding projects are identified at an early stage and the necessary corrective and preventive actions are taken and to ensure that the project is within contractual scope, on budget and meets the deadlines as specified within the contract(s).

.6.5.2 Upon commencement of any project, the Project Coordinator in the Client/Requesting Government Entity (or the Supervising Government Entity where applicable), should prepare physical progress reports and submit to the Projects Financing Directorate on a quarterly basis. Information in the report should give an adequate indication of physical progress and anticipated completion of the project. The report should contain the following:

1. Progress of project against initial milestones set
2. Assessment of project timeline and estimated time for completion
3. Review and assessment of the total cost incurred till date versus the total project cost
4. Number of work order changes performed (if any)
5. Anticipated challenges
6. Anticipated variations

6.5.3. the Project Coordinator in the Client/Requesting Government Entity must submit a copy of the actual completion reports to the beneficiary government entity in cases that require it.

.6.5.4 Channels must be established to enable the Projects Financing Directorate to maintain a day to day liaison with other Government Entities to monitor the progress of all current projects and prepare detailed financial reports on specific projects as required.

.6.5.5 The Project Financing Directorate must follow up with Government Entities on the initiation of projects in accordance to the forward plan.

.6.5.6 The Projects Financing Directorate requests any customized report for a project when deemed necessary from the Client/Requesting Government Entity coordinator or beneficiary.

.6.6 Project Variations and Modification

General Policies

.6.6.1 The definitions must be in line with the following:

Work order changes – minor changes that can be made on the spot over a short period of time with no cost and time implications. These changes arise over the

course of the contract to circumvent minor issues encountered during the delivery of work.

Significant change – any change other than work order changes that impact:

1. Scope;
2. Service level or type;
3. Cost and value;
4. Time; or
5. Contractor;
6. Other variations

.6.6.2 Contractors (or suppliers) must provide an estimate of the costs associated with the significant variation within an acceptable time frame as stipulated in the contract, before implementing the change.

.6.6.3 No claim is to be accepted from contractors related to the variation post mutual acceptance and measurement of all incremental costs, unless additional costs are related to an unforeseen circumstance and are in line with the claim policy and procedures in this Manual.

.6.6.4 No variation shall be accepted unless it has a valid justification. All variations must be in line with contractual terms, else the contract must be amended to accommodate the variation.

6.6.5. The approval of the Project Finance Department must be obtained by filling out and submitting Form No. MF1803 for any change in the contract value.

6.6.6. All amendments to the project implementation contract must be made in accordance with the laws and regulations governing government procurement.

.6.6.7 The government entity must obtain written prior approval from MOFNE and Tender Board, where the cost of the cumulative variation is 15% or more/less of the original contract cost

6.6.8. The request for approval of the amendment shall be submitted to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy by filling out and submitting Form No. MF1803, for any of the following cases:

1. Variation will consume more than the 5% contingency assigned; or

2. Single cost of variation is greater than BHD 50,000.

Budget Requests

.6.6.9 Any additional budget required for a contract shall be provided for in accordance to the following hierarchy, In case funding is not available in accordance to the hierarchy stated above, it is not permissible to exceed the total approved cost of any project unless there are substantive justifications thereof and after obtaining the approval from the Minister of Finance and National Economy:

1. Contract contingency.
2. Surplus of one contract to another from the same project.
3. Overall project contingency.
4. Other projects within the same Government Entity.
5. Other sources as deemed fit by the Projects Finance Directorate and are in line with the Budget Law.

Significant variation in the contract

.6.6.10 The Client/Requesting Government Entity initiates the request for contract variation. The impact of the variation is quantified in coordination with the Contractor and justifications are provided in a report format to Project Financing Directorate, which may include:

1.All costs must include VAT implications;

2.Notice of specific issue causing the variation

3.List of deliverables as per the contract that are affected by the variation

4.The exact amount of time the contract is being requested to be extended for, specifying working days or calendar days

5.Sketches, photographs or other images illustrating

6. If the variation is to extend the life of the project, the following should be specified:

A. Justifications include:

- Where additional works are assigned to the Contractor by the contracting Government Entity such that the remaining contract period is considered insufficient for the completion of the additional work.

- The suspension of the contracted work by the contracting Government Entity for reasons outside the contractor's responsibility.
- Circumstances out of the control of the Contractor or caused by the contracting Government Entity. The extension must be requested by the Contractor and supported by the documents listed above.
- List of other entities responsible for the delay.
- Description of the actions that the contractor will take to avoid or reduce further delays.
- Where works performed have implications on the cost of the overall

.6.6.11 All communications from the Contractor regarding cost implications are received in a formal letter signed and authorized by the Contractor's approving authority.

.6.6.12 Where budget amendment is required, sources of funds are identified and highlighted by the Projects Financing Directorate. The source of additional budget for the project is identified in accordance to the following hierarchy:

1. Contract contingency.
2. Surplus of one contract to another from the same project.
3. Overall project contingency.
4. Other projects within the same Government Entity.
5. Other sources. (determined by project financing directorate according to the budget law regulations).

.6.6.13 Upon acceptance, the Form MF-1803 procedures are initiated, and formal documentation is made in accordance to the contract variation clauses. The following should also be submitted:

1.Evaluation and justification report; and

2.Tender Board Approvals, if required

.6.6.14 Where changes need to be reflected in the contract, the necessary changes/amendment are attached to the original contract and PO amount is changed in line with Form MF-1803.

6.6.15. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy shall coordinate with the funding authority regarding any requests for a substantial amendment in the scope of the project, or when an additional budget is required, for projects financed by external parties.

.6.7 Project Closure

General Provision

.6.7.1 Upon successful delivery of a project, the procedures required to transfer goods/services to the custody of the Client/Requesting Government Entity are critical. These procedures include obtaining the necessary sign off, closing the project account and filing/documentation of the work carried out.

.6.7.2. The term “Contract Closure” refers to the process of completing all tasks that are mentioned as deliverable and outstanding in the originating contract detailing the scope of work.

6.7.3. No accounting entries should be entered or passed in the project account after closing.

.6.7.4 The defects liability period timeline should be in accordance to the contractual terms and conditions.

.6.7.5 Prior to closing a project, the following must be ensured:

1. Confirmation on the delivery and formal acceptance of deliverables;
2. All claims have been logged within the time frame stipulated in the contract from closure
3. and no further claims are pending

.6.7.6After project closure, Government Entities must provide Project Financing Directorate with a report identifying the lessons learned (note: lessons learned should be recorded from the point of the project or phase commencement).

.6.7.7 Any amount allocated for a project but remaining unspent after the completion of the project shall be deemed as surplus to that project and shall not be used for any other project or the expansion of the same project, , except with the approval of the Minister of MOFNE.

.6.7.8 In general, any item that constitutes an asset must be recorded in the FAR as and when required by the policies of the Fixed Asset section.

Project progress

.6.7.9 Upon completion of a phase/milestone in a project, a check must be performed by the Government entity:

1. on the deliverable [either a service or asset] by the Project Coordinator in the Client/Requesting Government Entity in order to assess if all works completed are as per contractual terms.

2.Upon satisfaction of the works completed during the end of the phase/milestone, where required, there is an exchange of handover documents between the Contractor and the Client/Requesting Government Entity.

3.In case of non-satisfactory completion of the milestone, the Contractor is requested to make necessary changes and no payments will be processed until all issues are resolved.

4.In case the completion of a phase/milestone is related to an asset, the Finance Recourse Directorate (or equivalent) within the Client/Requesting Government Entity updates the Fixed Asset Register.

5.In addition, all claims must be received and processed from the Contractor in accordance to the claim procedures pertaining to the phase/milestone.

6. Upon the handover documents being exchanged, the payment procedure can commence as per contractual terms, in coordination with the Treasury Directorate.

End of Contract

6.7.10 For a contract to be ultimately and conclusively closed, the Contractor must have completed all components of their deliverables. All contracts related to the project must be effectively closed; with contract closure occurring within a reasonable time frame after the exchange of the final contract between the concerned parties.

.6.7.11 Upon a contract(s) ending as per the agreed upon timeline stated in the originating/amended contract, a check must be performed:

1. on the deliverable [either a service or asset] by the Project Coordinator in the Client/Requesting Government Entity in order to assess if all works completed are as per contractual terms.

2.Upon satisfaction of the works completed during the end of the contract, where required, there is an exchange of handover documents between the Contractor and the Client/Requesting Government Entity.

3.In case of non-satisfactory completion, the Contractor is requested to make necessary changes and no payments will be processed until all issues are resolved.

4.The Client/Requesting Government Entity must review and assess if there are any post-contract obligations on behalf of the Contractor, and if so, act accordingly.

5.Upon commencement of the Defects Liability Period, any issues observed by the Client/Requesting Government Entity must be submitted to the Contractor.

6.If it is found that the observed defect(s) pertaining to works that are not in accordance with the contract, the Contractor is liable to amend the defect(s) as per contractual terms.

7. If no defects are observed by the Client/Requesting Government Entity, the Contractor must sign off on the completed works within the time period specified in the contract.

8.A Closure Form is signed by the Client/Requesting Government Entity and the Contractor, and the same is forwarded to the Projects Financing Directorate.

9. Upon the signing of the completion certificate, Project Closure can occur after the following have been completed:

10.All contracts pertaining to the works of the project have officially been closed;

11.A review of the project budget is carried out;

12.All claims received from the Contractor have been processed; and

13.A Post Evaluation Report is completed by the Projects Financing Directorate.

14.The Finance Directorate (or equivalent) of the Client/Requesting Government Entity updates the records in the Fixed Asset Register, where required.

15.In case of a difference between the actual spend on the contract and the PO value, the Client/Requesting Government Entity raises the Form MF-1803 to Project financing directorate indicating the difference and amend the PO with the actual value.

16.The Projects Financing Directorate will proceed to review the request close and the PO related to the contract preventing further entries.

17.Upon satisfaction of the works completed as per contractual terms, the final payment procedure can commence in coordination with the Treasury Directorate.

Defects Liability Period

.6.7.12 After the completion and delivery of the project and the commencement of the liability period for defects according to the terms of the contract, the government entity checks for any defects in the implementation of the project resulting from works that do not comply with the contract and issues instructions to the contractor to correct them within an agreed time frame in accordance with the terms of the contract.

6.7.13. The government entity must examine the works carried out by the contractor to correct any defects that were reported to them, and ensure that they were completed in the required manner, and accordingly, a certificate of final completion of the project is issued.

Premature Contract Termination by Mutual Agreement

.6.7.14 Upon an event arising in which the contracting Government entity wishes to terminate a contract with the Contractor, the contracting Government entity shall:

1. send a formal letter to the Contractor detailing the reasoning for the desire to terminate a contract.

2. The Contractor will formally respond to the contracting Government authority with the decision to either accept or reject the termination of the contract within one month from receipt of the contracting Government authority's letter.

3.Once accepted by the Contractor, the contract shall be terminated by a written agreement signed by the two parties, including the following supporting information [non-exhaustive list]:

a. Conditions for contract termination

b. Date of contract termination

c. Results of contract termination

Premature Contract Termination by the Contracting Government Entity

.6.7.15 Upon discovery of sufficient reasoning that the Contractor has delayed the execution of contract or failed to comply with the contract conditions, the contracting Government entity shall:

1. Throughout the process of premature termination, the Legal Advisor at MOFNE must be consulted prior to taking any steps.

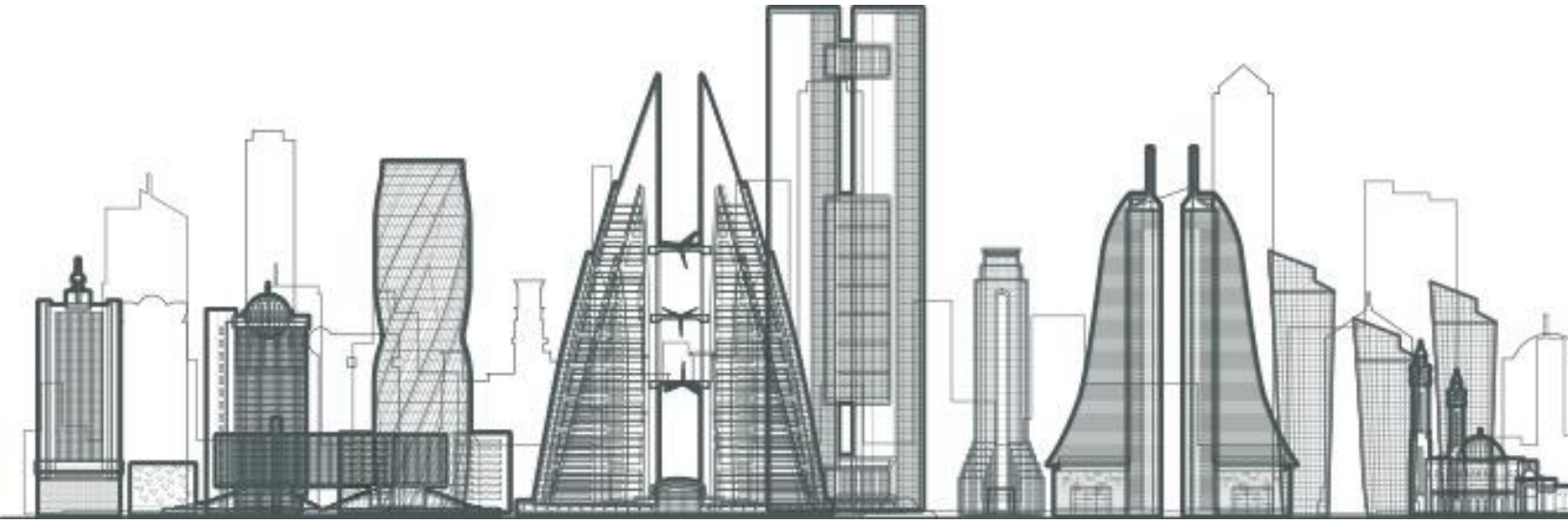
2. serve the Contractor with an official notice of intent to terminate the contract. The contracting Government entity shall also forward a copy of the notice to the Projects Financing Directorate.

3. Contractor fail to respond to the notice letter, the contracting Government entity shall send a warning letter to the Contractor, stating that the contract will be revoked unless the situation is rectified within one month from the date of the warning letter to the Projects Financing Directorate.

4.Once the one-month warning period has passed in which the Contractor has failed to rectify the situation, the contracting Government entity shall advise the Contractor in writing of its decision to end the contract.

5. The Contracting Government entity shall then coordinate with the Projects Financing Directorate over the appropriate way to complete the execution of the contract.

7. Bank Account



Section summary and responsibilities	
General description of the section	This section covers the general policies relating to the opening and management of government bank accounts.
Directorates supervising the section operations	• Treasury Directorate - Oversee government bank accounts.

General Policies

7.1.1. For the purposes of this section of this manual, general government accounts mean the group of bank accounts that represent the general government account in which all government revenues are received and all government expenditures are disbursed, and it also includes any other bank accounts supervised by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy such as deposit accounts and others.

7.1.2. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy is responsible for opening general government accounts, supervising and managing them in order to achieve

adequate control over them, and no other government entity may communicate directly with banks regarding general government accounts or financial transfers, except in cases authorized to do so by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

7.1.3. The authority of money withdrawal from general government accounts at the banks shall be vested only in the Minister of Finance and National Economy or the officials who acts on his behalf. Such authority may be delegated in accordance with the provisions of these regulations of authority levels in this manual.

7.1.4. The government entities shall deposit the collected funds in the revenues general government account, and non-government entities may not do so except only after obtaining the permission of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for so doing.

7.1.5. The Treasury Directorate reconciles the entries between the records of the central financial system and the bank statements at the end of the day or on a weekly basis and at the end of each month depending on the circumstances and the nature of the account movement, and makes sure that all revenues deposited with the bank have been recorded by the bank during the same month, and preparing a settlement statement to match the balances and work to settle the differences, if any.

7.1.6. Governmental entities authorized by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy shall collect their revenues in whole or in part through local or foreign banks, with all the conditions specified under this permit, and the obligation to follow up and verify the completion of all financial, accounting and control requirements related to receiving, depositing and recording their revenues deposited in their bank accounts.

7.1.7. The validity of disbursement from public bank accounts is subject to the authority levels specified in this manual.

Government Deposits

7.1.8. The Undersecretary of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy approves the list of banks that are dealt with for depositing government deposits from the list of banks and financial institutions licensed by the Central Bank of Bahrain, provided that they are reviewed annually or whenever the need arises.

7.1.9. Government deposits are deposited in banks in light of the interest rate, nature and volume of transactions and banking facilities provided by those banks to government entities, in addition to the share of these banks in contributions to local government loans and bonds and considerations related to supporting the national economy.

7.1.10. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy is responsible for opening accounts related to depositing and investing government deposits and makes decisions related to determining the type of account into which to deposit and the term of the deposit, in accordance with expectations of the inflows received and estimates of cash needs to finance the payments necessary to pay government obligations.

7.1.11. Government entities must return the surplus in their budget to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

7.1.12. The approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy must be obtained to invest the funds deposited in private bank accounts, and it should also be ensured that such investments do not affect the government entity's ability to pay its obligations related to these funds.

7.1.13. Any interest earned from investing funds deposited in private bank accounts must be transferred to the general government account.

7.1.14. Any interest earned or received from private bank accounts (or highlighted separately as part of periodic reports) must be notified to the Treasury Directorate and deposited in the government's general revenue account.

Online banking

.7.1.15 Government Entities may make use of electronic banking ("eBanking") services offered by their respective banks to review the account balances.

.7.1.16 Online banking operations are subject to the authority levels specified in this manual.

.7.1.17 Prior to utilizing an eBanking service and on an ongoing basis, the Treasury Directorate is responsible for ensuring that:

2. Government entities apply adequate internal controls to manage eBanking account;

3. The eBanking portal takes into consideration the authority limit layers of the Government Entity and that workflow segregation of initiating and approving online payments services are available; and
4. Cyber security measures (such as encryption, user authentication measures, etc.) are implemented by the Government Entity and financial institution for making the utilization of the services safe

.7.1.18 In case of any concerns, the Treasury Directorate may terminate (or place on hold) the eBanking service until such issues are resolved.

.7.1.19 The Treasury Directorate and Finance Director (or equivalent) of the Government Entity is responsible for allocating the access to the eBanking service to an authorized individual from the Finance Directorate (or equivalent) and authorized signatories only.

.7.1.20 All authorized individuals for the operating the eBanking portal on behalf of the Government Entity must abide by the following:

1. The password is always protected and is not shared with others (including the one-time password)
2. Keep their contact details always up to date
3. Keep their device's anti-virus software up to date and ensure measures are taken for the removal of all spyware
4. Check bank statements regularly to identify any erroneous or criminal transactions that might have been occurred without the user's knowledge
5. Ensure the correctness of information before conducting online transfers or any other transactions.

.7.1. 21Individuals provided access (including approval authorities) to the eBanking services shall be held responsible for any errors, omissions or misuse of the eBanking services including its setup.

.7.1.22 The access rights and permission of respective individuals should be terminated when their employment with the Government Entity ends.

.7.1.23 Ministries with Independent Accounts are to comply with the rules and limits of authorization when applying for online banking services. Furthermore, MOFNE will perform periodic checks to ensure that.

.7.2 Private Bank Account

General Policies

7.2.1. For the purposes of this section of the manual, a private bank account is the bank account that is opened for use by a specific government entity for private purposes such as:

a. Managing funds exempted from supplying in the general government account that the government entity collects, such as donations and trusts.

B. Depositing revenues and paying expenses for government entities with independent budgets.

7.2.2. Amounts of trusts deposited in private bank accounts are considered an obligation of the government entity supervising them, and they may not be disbursed for purposes contrary to the purposes assigned to them.

7.2.3. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy shall undertake the opening of the private bank account in cases that require this, and government entities may not directly agree with banks to open their own bank accounts directly, nor do they coordinate with them regarding withdrawal authorities and other things except in coordination with the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

.7.2.4 Accounts may only be opened with national and local banks approved by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and the Central Bank of Bahrain, and the name of the bank account must be appropriate for the purpose for which the account was opened, and no official bank account may be given a personal name.

.7.2.5 It is not permitted to open a private bank account that includes an overdraft validity.

.7.2.6. The concerned minister (or his equivalent) issues a decision delegating the authority to sign checks, payment documents, transfer letters, and external payment requests from private bank accounts, within the limits of the levels of authority specified in this manual.

.7.2.7 All special nature accounts shall be subject to regular Government auditing and must be included within the Government annual auditing plan. Government entities that manage such accounts must provide auditors with all the required information, including accounting records, financial documents and bank statements. Auditors may contact banks to get any details related to such accounts.

.7.2.8. Governmental entities must immediately notify the Treasury Directorate of any open bank accounts with them that were not subject to prior approval in accordance with the provisions of this manual and provide them with a list of the names of those authorized to sign.

.7.2.9. The Treasury Directorate must maintain a record of all private bank government accounts, provided that this record contains the necessary information such as the account type, purpose and validity levels.

7.2.10. All financial and accounting forms and documents (paper and electronic) are subject to verification by the concerned officials to ensure their correctness before being referred for approval.

7.2.11. As part of the settlement process, responsibilities and target settlement dates for any open balances must be determined, and the responsible government entity accountant must follow up on the pending items and settle them within the next month.

7.2.12. The accountant concerned at the government entity must prepare a follow-up statement and send it to the concerned director of financial resources along with providing an update on the status of the outstanding amounts and balances and deciding on them if required.

7.2.13. To ensure proper management of bank accounts and their balances, government entities must keep and maintain a record of deficits or surpluses in government funds, as based on data related to the movement of cash in and out, appropriate measures can be taken when needed. All erroneous payments and overpayments must be recorded on that register.

Procedures of Opening a Bank Account

.7.2.14 A private bank account is opened in the bank by following the following procedures:

A. As and when required, an eligible Government Entity sends a formal letter, signed by the Minister (or equivalent), to MOFNE requesting to open an account.

The letter should include the following:

1. Name proposed for the account;

2. Purpose for opening the account;

3. KYC/FATCA forms;

4. Identity Document;

5. Name of authorized individuals; and to manage the account according to the provisions and procedures stipulated in this manual.

B. The request is reviewed by the Treasury Directorate and where further information is required, the Government Entity provides the same.

C. Where the request is approved, the Treasury Directorate applies for the new account with the selected and approved bank and coordinate between the bank and the Government Entity.

D. Upon opening, all documentation related to the bank account is maintained with the Government Entity and a copy provided to the Treasury Directorate.

E. The Treasury Directorate forwards a request to the FSDD for creating a new account code for the bank account in the chart of accounts. The request should be accompanied by all necessary details on the bank account (such as bank, account name, currency, etc.) and approvals for the same.

Subsequent changes to the account

7.2.15. The amendment must be made in the persons authorized to sign for withdrawal from accounts and the limits of their powers through the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

7.2.16. The government entity must inform the Treasury Department of any change in the authorities related to the account (for example: due to the change in

personnel, promotions, and change of authority limits) and accordingly it coordinates with the bank to make such changes.

Donation accounts

Receive donations

7.2.17. Government entities may accept cash and non-monetary donations that are conditional or unconditional for a specific purpose, Government Entities shall not accept donations less than BD 20,000, whether from inside or outside the Kingdom, for any purpose, except with the approval of the Minister or the head of the concerned government entity. The Prime Minister's approval shall be obtained if the amount of the donation has reached the above stated amount or more.

7.2.18. The government entity that receives conditional donations must coordinate in advance with the Ministry of Finance and National Economy regarding the terms of the agreement with the donor, and determine whether accepting the donation will result in the government incurring recurring or non-recurring expenses in the future.

7.2.19. The government entity shall supply the cash donation received to the bank account specified by the Treasury Directorate, and notify it in writing of this, provided that the notice of deposit in the bank is attached to it.

7.2.20. A General Ledger account code should be designated for each received cash donation. The amount of the received shall be entered into the designated account code.

Donation disbursement

7.2.21. All payments related to the received subsidy shall be deducted from the account designated for it, and the government entity should maintain any required additional registers to control expenses from the received cash donation and reconcile the balances of the register with the monthly statement of accounts issued by Ministry of Finance.

7.2.22. The government entity shall spend the restricted cash donation on the purposes or activities by the person or the donor, Surplus from restricted cash donation may not be spent for other purposes, unless it is coordinated with

directorate of Treasury at the Ministry of Finance and approval of the person or the donor is obtained.

7.2.23. The government entity must coordinate in advance with the Treasury Directorate to determine the uses of cash benefits that the person or the donor has not required specific disbursements or conditions for their use.

7.2.24. All purchases and expenditures from the cash benefits received are subject to the provisions and procedures specified by the laws and regulations issued regarding the organization of purchases and payment of government payments.

7.2.25. If Government entity consider –for public interest- sale of received in-kind donation, it should inform directorate of Treasury at the Ministry of Finance of the justifications of such decision, and deposit the amount to bank account designated by directorate of Treasury.

payment of aids by Ministry of Work and Social Development

.7.2.26 Aids means Cash aids paid by Ministry of Work and Social Development to condign families & individuals according to related laws and orders (As a reward for people with special needs), with an exception of social security aids covered by Law no. (18) of 2006 regarding social security.

.7.2.27 Minister of Work and Social Development will issue orders to specify types of aids, conditions of payments and amounts paid to each condign category according to issued laws and orders.

.7.2.28 A permanent committee or more as required shall be established by an order of the undersecretary of Ministry of Work and Social Development of at least three members selected from relevant sections to revise aids applications and decide aid’s amounts.

.7.2.29 Case code is used as a reference for all aids forms and documents. Case code of the beneficiary who has been decided to stop obtaining any further amounts, shall not be re-used for another case.

.7.2.30 Payment shall be paid to beneficiary or his entrust, and could be paid to an appointed agent by official order (form 1) authenticated at Ministry of Work and Social Development.

.7.2.31 Aids are paid within allocated yearly budget of Ministry of Work and Social Development.

.7.2.32 Responsibilities of Directorate of Social Welfare at Ministry of Work and Social Development:

1.Receive and check applications and transfer the qualified one to concerned committee.

2.Re-study existing beneficiaries, and made required amendments to granted aids.

3.Maintain a permanents file for each beneficiary including all information, copies of forms and documents and reports.

4.Send requests to all beneficiaries to update their data.

5.Keep separate register for each type of aids, containing beneficiaries' names, CPR, aid amounts, bank account numbers, and shall be updated regularly.

Receive and Execute Aids Application Procedures:

.7.2.33 Aids applications is presented to Directorate of Social Welfare by filling the standard form designed for each aid type, and it should be attached with document specified by Directorate of Social Welfare.

.7.3.34 Directora of Social Welfare will check the applications and ensure that are completeness of all supporting documents.

.7.3.35 Directorate of Social Welfare will (as required) made a site visit and makes a report of beneficiary case condition, provided that the report includes a complete statement and description of the applicant living and social condition.

.7.3.36 Directorate of Social Welfare shall check prepared report with database of CPR at Central Information Organization, and any other entities, to ensure correctness of applicant information.

.7.3.37 Directorate of Social Welfare shall submit the report to concerned committee to take an action, and after that notify the applicant of the final decision.

.7.3.38 Directorate of Social Welfare will add the data of accepted application to aids register.

Amend & Stopping Aids Procedures:

.7.3.39 Procedures of para .7.2.35 to .7.3.37 will be applied by the Directorate of Social Welfare in case of amending aids.

.7.3.40 Directorate of Social Welfare shall amend or stop the aid in case of any reason requires that.

.7.3.41 Directorate of Social Welfare shall keep aids' monthly statements & monthly reconciliation statements for amounts not withdrawn for two months since they are transferred to suspend account. Beneficiary could withdraw his aid within this period, and he/she could not get the aid after that, unless Minister of Work ans Social Development decides another action.

.7.3.42 Directorate of Social Welfare shall submit monthly reconciling statements of prescribed beneficiaries' amounts to Finance Resources Directorate, this is to process unspent amounts as refunds on the same account to which those expenditures belong if they are recovered in the same year in which the disbursement was made, or to record them on the account designated for the settlement of previous years' results if they are recovered in a year following the year of disbursement.

Payment procedures of Aids:

.7.2.43 Directorate of Social Welfare shall prepare the following monthly statements for each bank:

a. Aids monthly statement (form 2) containing beneficiaries' names, case code, account numbers, and amounts, and store these data by any suitable digital method, such as CDs.

b. Monthly amendments & reconciliations statement (form 3).

c. New aids statement (form 4).

d. Beneficiaries' amount amendment statement (form 5).

e. Transfer from bank account statement (form 6).

f. Transfer to bank account statement (form 7).

.7.2.44 Directorate of Social Welfare shall send statements specified in para.7.2.43, and statement of new candidates and of other amendments on other cases to Financial Resources Directorate at Ministry of Work and Social Development.

Procedures of Financial Resources Directorate at Ministry of Work and Social Development:

.7.2.45 Check monthly aids payment statements and documents, including:

a. Check new or amended aids data.

b. Ensure completeness of supporting payment documents.

c. Check transferred aids to & from bank accounts with transfer requests.

d. Reconcile current month payments with last month payment data, and new and amended & cancelled aids statements, and amounts transferred from bank account to another.

e. Ensure sufficient budget for monthly deserved payments.

.7.2.46 Financial Resources Directorate at Ministry of Work and Social Development shall send Invoice Register including the following statements of each bank to Directorate of Treasury:

a. Aids monthly statement (form 2) containing beneficiaries' names, case code, account numbers and the amounts and store such data by any electronic method.

b. Monthly amendments & reconciliations statement (form 3).

Procedures of Directorate of Treasury:

.7.2.47 The Directorate of treasury check the statements & their reconciliations to ensure correctness of monthly payments, and start transferring amounts to proper bank accounts.

Closing a Bank Account

.7.2.48 As and when required the account closed as the following:

A. the Government Entity sends a formal letter, signed by the Minister (or equivalent), to the MOFNE requesting to close an account along with reasons for the same.

B. The request is reviewed by treasury directorate, and where further information is required, the Government Entity provides the same.

C. Where the request is approved, the Treasury Directorate specifies a designated account belonging to the Government Entity or the Government's general account.

D. Government Entity and the Treasury Directorate will coordinate to complete the reconciliation of the account.

E. Term deposits and profits (or interests) earned on the account. In such cases, assess the opportunity cost of closing the account.

F. Any cheque payments yet to be cashed. In such circumstances, the amount equivalent to cheques issued should be maintained until the earlier of encashment or expiry of the cheque.

G. Any upcoming payments expected to be received by the Government Entity into the bank account. In such situations, the Government Entity should either prolong the closure until the final receipt of the funds or notify the third party of another bank account details to make the transfer to.

H. Any other special circumstance that warrants a consideration.

I. When all the above conditions have been met and no further obligations are scheduled for the account, the Treasury Directorate in coordinate with the Government Entity transfer the funds to the designated bank account.

J. Post transfer and ensuring that the account is completely liquidated, the necessary accounting entries are passed by the Government Entity to record the transaction

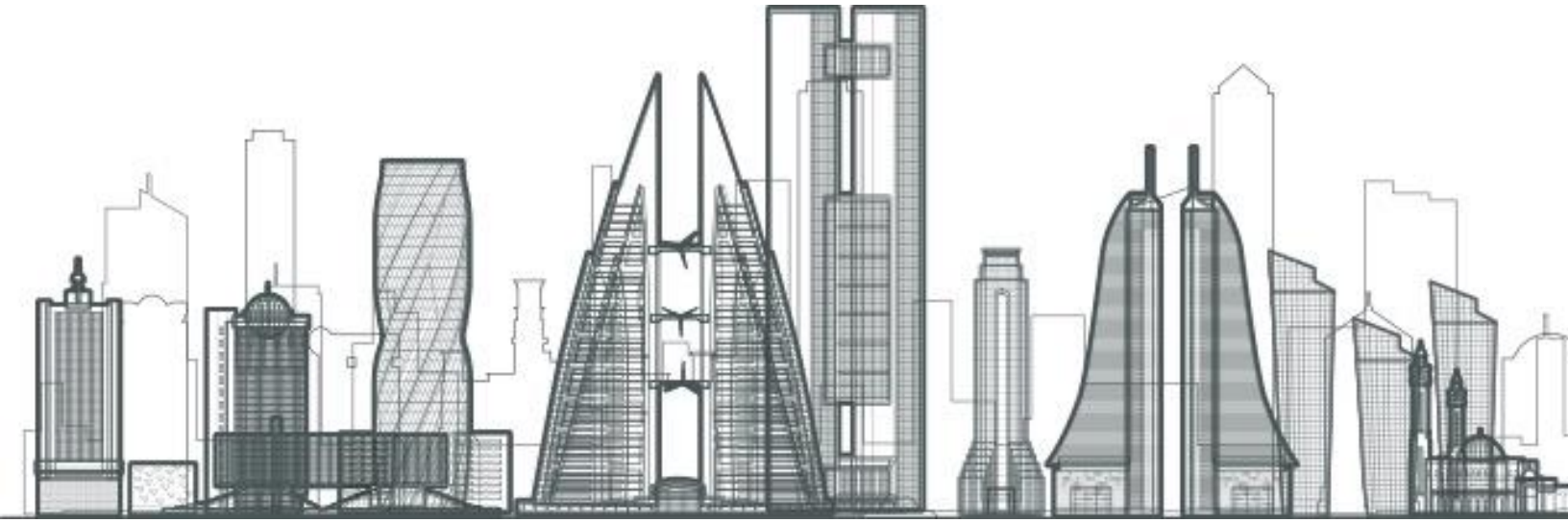
K. The Treasury Directorate then proceeds with the closing procedures with the bank as per the bank's internal processes.

L. All documentation pertaining to the closure is maintained by both the Government Entity and the Treasury Directorate.

M. The Government Entity forwards a request to the FSDD for stopping the account code for in the chart of accounts to prevent any further entries. The request

should be accompanied by all necessary details on the bank account (such as bank, account name, currency, etc.) and approvals for the same.

.8 Payment



Section summary and responsibilities	
General description of the section	This section covers general policies and procedures related to payments to suppliers, service providers, and others, whether to parties inside or outside the Kingdom of Bahrain.
Directorates supervising the section operations	• Treasury Directorate - overseeing the process of making government payments to suppliers and other eligible parties.

General Policies

.8.1.1Government payments paid to Suppliers should not exceed the value of the supplied commodities or materials or the works or services provided.

.8.1.2 Government payments made to local suppliers should be in Bahraini Dinars, in all government transaction.

.8.1.3 Government entity may not in any case make government payments

from the revenues collected or from the amounts in their custody even on a temporary basis. They should not make government payments from the advance amounts or the other amounts they have, except after making prior arrangements with the Directorate of Treasury which will specify the rules, purposes and procedures that should be observed by the concerned government entity upon payment from such amounts.

.8.1.4 This policy also applies to standing orders issued by the government entities, which must be approved based on the total amount during the expected period.

.8.1.5 The government authority may conduct a set-off between the amounts payable to the supplier and revenues payable by him in the cases where the nature of the transaction so requires, on the condition that:

1.The Directorate of Treasury should approve the set-off.

2. The supplier should agree in writing to make a set-off between the amounts payable to him and the amounts payable by him. He should also sign a discharge showing the amounts which have been settled with the government entity.

.8.1.6 The Directorate of Treasury shall prepare and send a payment notice to suppliers whose dues are disbursed with one of the approved government payment instruments.

.8.1.7 Payments due to the supplier may not be transferred, paid or given to any other party except in the following cases:

1. Where a court order is issued by the competent court at the Ministry of Justice and Islamic Affairs to the effect that all or part of the amounts payable to the Supplier may be transferred to another party.
2. When payments are paid directly to the sub-contractor, provided that the main contract made with the main contractor should contain a provision authorizing the government entity to pay directly to the sub-contractor.
3. In any other cases approved by the MOFNE after ensuring that the government payments to a party other than the supplier will discharge the government entity from the amounts payable by it to the supplier.

.8.1.8 The Directorate of Treasury at Ministry will be entitled to withhold any government amounts payable to the supplier if he refrains from, defaults on or delays the settlement of any government amounts or revenues payable by him to any government entity.

.8.1.9 Delay fines, penalties and any other deductions payable to a government entity by virtue of the provisions of the contract made between the two parties should be deducted from the government payments. Penalties and fines should be credited to the revenue account of the general government revenues account.

.8.1.10 Government entities seek advice from the legal advisor of MOFNE in the following cases:

1. The disputed claims that require referring them to arbitration or raising them to the judiciary, after the government entity has exhausted all appropriate efforts to resolve the dispute by amicable means within the framework of the provisions of the contract concluded with the disputed party.

2. Disputed claims with the suppliers, if the settlement of the same may result in

the relinquishment of the government dues, or the payment of amounts exceeding the agreed amounts for supplying the materials or performing the services or works.

4. Claims submitted by suppliers for obtaining compensations or claiming the settlement of penalties on the grounds that the government entity is in default in respect of its contractual obligations.

.8.1.11 Due government payments may not be split for avoiding any provisions or procedures related to the payment procedures contained in the Standard Finance Manual, such as splitting payments to avoid payments approval according to the limitations provided for in the Authority Levels Section.

8.1.12. When a government entity supplies goods and / or services to another party, a copy of the issued invoice must be sent to The Directorate of Treasury when it is sent to the receiving government entity.

8.1.13. The government entities must initiate the entry and declaration of the bills of their financial obligations in the central financial system upon receiving them from the suppliers, and The Directorate of Treasury must also permit and pay the bills declared by government entity so that the payment period does not exceed what was agreed upon in the purchase contracts or 40 days after receiving them, this includes transactions with other government entities, such as electricity and water consumption bills.

8.1.14. In the event that the recipient’s receipt of the payment due to him is not

completed after its issuance, because the delivery address or the specified transfer data are not correct, or for any other reason, The Directorate of Treasury must investigate and try to pay the payment in all possible ways, and in the event that it is unable to do so within three months of the issuance of the payment instrument, It is necessary to cancel the payment instrument and record the amount in the suspended account instead of the bank account.

Approving Government Payments

.8.1.15 Documents and transactions of the government payments should be approved by the government entities and the Directorate of Treasury in accordance with the Authority Levels specified in the Standard Finance Manual.

.8.1.16 No employee may combine the authority of approving purchases and payments of the same transaction even if this is within his authority levels determined by the Authority Levels Section of the Standard Finance Manual. However, government entities which cannot implement such separation in approval competency may be excluded.

.8.1.17 An employee may not approve government payments if he is the beneficiary from the government payments, or if he has a special or personal interest (financial or otherwise) in the making of government payments. In such cases, government payments should be approved at a higher competent functional level.

.8.1.18 Documents and certificates of government payments should be approved by signing them in writing by the approving employee. Other means of signing, such as stamping, using a pre-dated signature, or using a signature printed on paper, a photocopied signature or a signature printed electronically, are not allowed.

Advance Payments settlements

.8.1.19 Advance payments are only allowed if approved is taken from MOFNE.

.8.1.20 The request for approval of commitment to pay advance payments suppliers after the request is authorized internally by the legal advisor and the authorized administrative level in the government entity according to the authority levels specified in this standard, to the following authorities:

A. Central Efficiency Management for Recurring Expense Contracts.

B. Central Administration for Government Procurement for Standard Contracts for Recurring Expenses.

C. project financing directorate for project contracts.

8.1.21. It is permissible to accept advance payments to suppliers, provided that the government entity obtains guarantees from the supplier in exchange for advance payment (a bank guarantee, for example), except in exceptional cases approved by the concerned departments.

.8.1.22. Advances to the supplier are recorded by deducting them from the payment value of the subsequent invoices

. 8.1.23. The advance payment is recorded in the contract register to follow up deducting the advance payment from the supplier's dues according to the percentages or amounts specified in the contract terms.

Responsibilities

Responsibilities of Government Authorities

.8.1.24 The Directorates Financial Resources at government entities shall undertake the following responsibilities and functions to control government payments:

1. Specifying the financial internal control system suitable to the Standard Finance Manual and provisions related to it.
2. Separation between the functions and responsibilities of the directorates, Sections or functions which undertake the responsibilities of authorising and supervising purchasing procedures, receiving procedures, procedures of paying government payments in a way suitable to the functional organization of the government entity.
3. Taking the necessary procedures for paying the suppliers dues without delay after receipt and acceptance of the required

materials and services and the completion of payment supporting documents.

4. Reviewing, approving and registering of all government payments, preparing payment vouchers and sending them to MOFNE for approval and payment.

5. Obtaining (on a monthly basis) account statements of the amounts owed by them from suppliers (whenever possible) for matching and reviewing them with the records, and keeping these statements with the attachments supporting the government payment exchange vouchers.

6. Reviewing and verifying payments reports provided by the Accounts Payable System to check the accuracy of the government payments and following-up the unpaid or delayed invoices, and seeking to remove the causes of delay.

7. Notifying MOFNE on a regular basis of the amendments required for correcting the registers or reports of the Accounts Payable System. This can achieve by prepare and sending a Journal Entry Form – From No. FMIS GL002.

8. Replying to the suppliers' inquiries in respect of the procedures and progress for the payment of dues in coordinate with the Treasury Directorate.

Responsibilities and Functions of the Directorate of Treasury

.8.1.25 The Directorate of Treasury at MOFNE shall undertake the following

functions and responsibilities to control government payments:

1. Approving the licensing of all government payments after revising them, checking that the concerned government a has implemented the effective laws, rules and regulations, and checking the supporting documents and the financial and procedural soundness of the transaction before paying the transaction to its beneficiaries.

2. Approving the designating of permanent and temporary

financial advance amounts for the government entities.

3. Authorizing the government payment in the CFS.

5. Fixing the dates on which government payments are made, and programming the payment of financial payments to the suppliers in such a way as appropriate to the cash flow policy for paying government payments. It should also be observed that the payment to suppliers dues should not be later than the credit periods or the allowed payment periods provided for in the contract made with the supplier.

6. Preparing the cheques, financial transfers and the other local and overseas payment instruments paid from the general government accounts, issuing and authorising them on behalf of the governments in accordance with the authority levels specified in the authority levels systems – of the Standard Finance Manual.

7. Managing government accounts at banks and suggesting the suitable means for the availability of the cash required for covering government payments.

8. Maintaining and updating the Vendor Master List of the Accounts Payable System.

9. Reviewing the relevant reports in the Accounts Payable System and making the verifications and settlements required for updating the details of the System records.

Follow-up Procedures for Recovery of Overpayments and Wrong Payments

.8.1.26 The concerned government entity should, upon the occurrence of a payment made in excess of the due amount or made to the wrong person, immediately contact the concerned person or authority by telephone and

confirm the same at once by sending a written notice by fax or by any other suitable means to the concerned person or authority to return the overpayment or the wrong payment on the same day if possible or on the following working day at most. It should also inform the Directorate of Treasury at the same time of the details of the case.

.8.1.27 If the party or person to whom the payments were made in excess of the due amount or wrongly stalls or refuses to return the payments, the government entity should coordinate with the Directorate of Treasury to deduct the claim amount from the payments due to him at present or in the future by any government entity, from the insurance amount or from the guarantees available at any other government entity (if any), and coordinate with the legal advisor at MOFNE to take any other suitable alternative procedures.

.8.1.28 Accounting treatment of errors in payment is made according to the policies specified in the “Financial and Accounting System” section of this standard.

8.1.29. Payments are processed to settle previous years’ accounts in the central financial system through the government entity entering the invoice details in the central financial system without entering the accounting tab and then the Treasury Directorate completes the procedures for entering the tabulation and passing the payment.

Old Claims

General Policies:

.8.1.30 The term old claims mentioned in this section means the invoices submitted by suppliers after the lapse of six months and more than the delivery of the goods or services to the government entity.

.8.1.31 Disputed claims which are six months old or more from the date from the date of receipt of the goods or services is not subject to the provisions and procedures of this Sub-Section if the dispute is settled after the lapse of more than six months. They will be subject to the normal procedures provided for in this of the Standard Finance Manual.

.8.1.32 Old claims may not be paid if their right to claim lapses for reason of prescription in accordance with the applicable laws of the Kingdom of Bahrain.

.8.1.33 Non-original documents may be accepted for the claim if the government entity is convinced of the validity of the claim.

.8.1.34 In the event that the original copies of the claim documents are lost or damaged, copies of them can be accepted provided that they are stamped with the word (copy), and the supplier's documents shall be signed and stamped with his signature and official stamp.

.8.1.35 Government entities should ensure that all the documents supporting the old claim is attached, including the prior approval from the competent

government entities (if required) when the claim is sent to the Directorate of Treasury for processing and payment.

8.1.36. If the supplier is causing the claim delay, he must:

A. Signing the approved pledge form.

B. Submit confirmation of the claim from his auditors if the claims are of 10,000 dinars or more.

C. Submit an account statement showing the balance and the amounts owed to it by the government entity whenever possible.

Settlement Procedures of Old Claims

.8.1.37 The government entity will perform the following procedures for processing and payment of old claims:

1. Checking the correctness of the details of the claim and the supporting documents, and the consistency and correctness of the claim compared to the same supplier's previous transactions and claims.
2. Reviewing and comparing the claim details with the details of the obligations register and due invoices.
3. Reviewing and comparing the claim details with the details of payments equalling the claim value in the periodic reports of the General Ledger, Accounts Payable and any other registers kept by the government entity such as the stock registers and the control registers of agreements performance.
4. Preparing a written memorandum explaining the justifications of delay and the authority responsible for delaying the claim, together with the procedures taken by the government entity for

checking the correctness of the claim, provided that the memo and the invoice register report shall be declared in accordance with the validity levels specified in this manual, and shall be sent with the documents supporting the payment to the Treasury Directorate.

.8.1.38 The Directorate of Treasury presents old claims of 10,000 dinars or more that were made in a previous fiscal year to the budget directorate or the project finance directorate (each within its jurisdiction) to review their compliance with applicable budget laws and regulations.

procedures of settlement of old claims to the value of BD 100,000 or more

.8.1.39 In addition to the procedures specified in Paragraph .8.1.38, the government entity will coordinate with the Directorate of Treasury, consider the feasibility of appointing an independent auditor to examine the registers and books of the supplier who is submitting the claim, and submit a confirmation certificate stating the validity of the claim, provided that the supplier submitting the claim should bear the expenses of the independent auditor.

Procedures of settlement of old claims supported by copies or photocopies of the original documents

.8.1.40 In addition to the procedures specified in Paragraph .8.1.38, the government entity will take the following procedures to check the validity of the claim if the claim is supported by copies or photocopies of the original documents, whether the government entity or the supplier is responsible for the loss of any of the original claim documents:

1. Determining the acceptable justifications for the loss of the supporting original documents.

2. Ensuring that the required procedures specified on the purchase date are followed with the issue of purchase order or the signing of the agreement.

3. Ensuring that there is a proof of the goods receipt or the performance of services and works subject of claim.

4. Ensuring that there is no direct relation between the payments to the supplier submitting the claim and any other supplier dealing with the government authority. (An example of this is that the supplier submitting the claim maybe be a sub-contractor to a main contractor to whom the dues subject to the claim have been paid).

5. Ensuring that the documents supporting the claim are complete, and that the claim is in harmony and valid compared to the same supplier's previous transactions and claims.

6. Checking the accuracy of the details of the claim and the supporting documents.

7. Reviewing and comparing the claim details against the details of the commitments register and the payable invoices, including the details of the payments supported by copies or photocopies of the original documents.

8. Reviewing and comparing the claim details against the payment details from date of the delivery note or the date of goods supplied or the date of performing the services and the required works equalling the value of the claim in the periodic reports of the General Ledger and Accounts Payable Systems and any other additional registers kept by the government authority, such as the stock registers and the agreement implementation control registers.

.8.2 suppliers

Supplier Registration

.8.2.1 Government entity must keep a detailed record of all suppliers they contract with and the goods and services they provide, and a copy of this record must be provided to the Central Competence Department.

.8.2.2 All the details of the suppliers who deal with government entities should be registered in the Vendor Master List in the Accounts Payable System.

8.2.3. Government entity must ensure the accuracy of supplier details before registering / amending supplier records.

.8.2.4. All requests to add / modify a supplier must be submitted for approval by the Directorate of Treasury.

.8.2.5 When dealing with any local supplier that is not registered in the suppliers' master record within the accounts payable system, the supplier fills out a form No. FMISAP008 (Request for Action in the main file of the vendors) and the

bank transfer form with the required details and the relevant bank's authentication to confirm the correctness of the account details and send them to the e-mail address: vendors@mofne.gov.bh

.8.2.6. The Directorate of Treasury is responsible for entering supplier data into the central financial system.

8.2.7. In the event that a court ruling is issued withholding the supplier's payments from the court, the employee will update the supplier's details in the "Reason for attachment" in the system to stop any payments to the supplier until the payment is allowed by the courts.

Supplier review and evaluation

8.2.8. Government entities must conduct a careful review and evaluation of suppliers and keep a record of suppliers they deal with, including data on the types and prices of goods and services provided, to be used in the planning and evaluation process of procurement.

8.2.9. Government entities must provide the Central Competence Directorate with any data they request about the suppliers they are dealing with and the technical specifications of the goods and services they provide. This data may include the following:

a. The extent of adherence to the deadlines for the delivery of goods or services.

B. The quality of the goods or services provided.

C. the prices.

D. The level of service provided.

.8.3Local Payment

Direct Transfers to Suppliers' Bank Accounts

.8.3.1Government payments should be made to local suppliers by direct transfer to their bank accounts. However, the Directorate of Treasury may, in very limited cases, make payments by other payment instruments where necessity so requires.

.8.3.2 A government entity should, upon dealing with any local supplier whose name is not listed in the Vendor Master List of the Accounts Payable System, give the said supplier a copy of the application form of Electronic Fund Transfer Request – From No. MF0710.

.8.3.3 The Directorate of Treasury should transfer the dues of each supplier to the bank account specified by him on the Electronic Fund Transfer Request (EFTR). The dues may not be transferred to any other account unless the supplier notifies the Directorate of Treasury of amending the account details by completing the EFTR– Form No. MF0701 – with the new or amended details of the bank account.

.8.3.4 The bank account specified by the supplier for EFTR should be an account opened in his name. Nevertheless, the government entities responsibility regarding the supplier's dues will be discharged as soon as the value of such dues have been transferred to the account specified by him by virtue of EFTR– Form No. MF 0701.

.8.3.5 The Directorate of Treasury should follow the instructions and procedures specified in the User Manual of the Accounts Payable System to prepare, register and issue reports and make the appropriate verifications to check the correctness of the government payments of direct transfer.

.8.3.6 The supplier's application for transferring his dues to a bank other than the beneficiary bank may only be accepted after:

a. the supplier submits to the Directorate of Treasury a written statement issued and approved by the beneficiary bank to the effect that the bank has no objection to the transfer of the supplier's dues to another bank;

b. the expiry of the transfer date if it is limited to a fixed period of time; or

c. The competent Court at the Ministry of Justice and Islamic Affairs issues a court order to transfer the amounts payable to the supplier to another party.

Payment by Cheques

.8.3.7 A cheque should be issued in such a way as to minimize the possibility of making any subsequent changes in it in figures or words.

The following provisions should be observed when government cheques are

issued:

1. Upon writing the amount in figures, the first three digits on the right after the decimal point should be left for amount in files.

2. The amount of the cheque should be written in words and figures.

3. The official cheques agreed upon with the Bank having the account.

4. Cheque written by hand, should be written in Arabic where possible.

.8.3.8 No cheque may be drawn for less than one dinar.

.8.3.9 All cheques should be crossed and stamped with “Payee’s Account Only”. Such stamp may be cancelled by crossing it out and signing the cheque by the person authorized to sign. However, this may be done in exceptional cases only.

.8.3.10. The checks must be certified on the back, taking into account the matching of names and any conditions, if any, to avoid any errors.

.8.3.11 All signed cheques should be sent or delivered to their beneficiaries as soon as possible.

.8.3.12 Once the check has been issued to the beneficiary, government entities must follow up with the beneficiary on an ongoing basis to cash it as soon as possible.

Stopping Cheque Payment

.8.3.13 The right to stop payment of a cheque will be limited to the Director of Treasury Directorate.

.8.3.14 Where a cheque is cancelled for any reason before being issued, the word "Cancelled" should be written clearly on the cheque and its counterfoil. The cancellation details should be registered in the Accounts Payable System.

.8.3.15 A cheque will be considered cancelled immediately after obtaining a confirmation from the bank that the cheque will not be paid, and after the bank has taken all the necessary procedures to cancel it.

.8.3.16 The validity period of checks issued by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy expires according to the period specified by the laws of the Kingdom of Bahrain.

.8.3.17 A replacement cheque may issue by Treasury Directorate if it is proved that the beneficiary has not collected the cheque amount during its validity period.

.8.3.18 The registers of the Accounts Payable System should be amended with the details of the cancelled cheques immediately after obtaining a confirmation from the bank that the cancellation procedures have been completed.

.8.3.19 The data of canceled checks and the justifications for their cancellation

must be recorded in a register designated for this purpose. The canceled checks shall be kept in a safe place for the period of preservation stipulated in this manual.

Lost, Stolen and Damaged Cheques

.8.3.20 A cheque should be stopped immediately upon receiving a notification from the beneficiary that the cheque has been lost, stolen or damaged after he has received it. The beneficiary should submit the cheque to the Treasury Directorate if the bank refuses to pay by reason of damage or any other reason related to the safety and correctness of the cheque details.

.8.3.21 If the lost or stolen cheque is paid by the bank before the "stop payment notification" is submitted, the beneficiary should be notified that he has no legal right to claim a replacement cheque. However, he should be provided with any possible help to restore the amount of the stolen or lost cheque. If a case is filed, the matter should be referred to the legal advisor of MOFNE to provide his legal opinion.

Petty Cash

.8.3.22 Custody of petty cash float shall be at the responsibility of a designated employee, and shall be kept in secure and safe place.

.8.3.23 Impress system should be followed for the replenishment of the petty cash float. No request for replenishment shall be raised unless the petty cash

float is depleted by 75% or more. Petty cash float shall not be replenished more than once in a month, unless approved by Directorate of Treasury.

Procedures for payment out of the petty cash:

.8.3.24 The director or equivalent on the concerned government entity shall sign the invoice or supporting voucher to evidence his authorisation and approval for payment.

.8.3.25 After the petty cash invoice or supporting voucher is signed by authority level section, the cashier shall allocate a serial number to every invoice or voucher and record details of the voucher in Form No. M0801 – Request for petty replenishment.

8.3.26. The petty cash custodian must keep the disbursement receipts from the petty cash advance, and he must make an inventory and daily settlement of the petty cash advance.

Procedures for petty cash replenishment:

8.3.27. The Treasury Department can disburse the petty cash advance in advance to government entities or upon building On the actual disbursement documents after approval of those expenditures.

8.3.28 When the total payments out of petty cash reaches 75% or more of the approved petty cash float, the cashier shall prepare Form No. MF0801 - Request

for Petty Cash Replenishment - after it has been authorised by the Director concerned and send it with all relevant supporting documents to the Directorate of Financial Resources in the government entity concerned, and retained the second copy of Form No. MF0801 in a file for follow up.

.8.3.29 The Directorate of Financial Resources in the government entity after the receipt of Form No. MF0801 and the relevant attachments, review, sign and send the Request for Petty Cash Replenishment -without relevant attachments- to the MOFNE for authorization and replenishment.

Payment of Phone Bills

.8.3.30. Government entities can coordinate with the telephone company for obtaining any number of monthly standard statements according to the budget codes and its approved programmes. Each statement bears a special reference number, and includes a group of telephone numbers according to the order that suits each Government entity.

.8.3.31 The Government entities should arrange their telephone numbers including the mobiles according to the suitable budget codes from which the costs of telephone bills will be deducted. They should coordinate with the telephone company for designating a reference number to each group of telephone numbers so that a standard monthly statement is issued for them.

.8.3.32 If the Government entities has an objection regarding the contents of any

invoice of the detailed telephone bills which constitute the subscriber's standard statement, it should firstly settle the difference directly with the telephone company which will amend the detailed bill and standard statement according to the agreed settlement. Then, the government entity will process such bill and send it to MOFNE for review and approval of payment.

Processing of Paying Telephone Bills

.8.3.33 The telephone bills processing according to the following:

1-The government entity should review the subscriber's standard monthly statement and check it against the detailed set of bills for each telephone, ensuring that the form No. MF 2304 – International Telephone Call Approval Form – is presented and that it contains the detailed bills of all the international calls.

2-When telephone bills are processed, the following details should be recorded in the Accounts Payable System.

3-Bill number: The reference number of the subscriber's standard statement should be mentioned. It should begin from the left, and should be followed by six digits representing the month and year in which the standard statement was issued. The following example demonstrates the order of the additional numbers in the year 2020 statements:

Date	Month	Date	Month	Date	Month
01-2020	January	05-2020	May	09 -2020	September
02 - 2020	February	06 - 2020	June	10 - 2020	October
03 - 2020	March	07 - 2020	July	11 - 2020	November
04 -2020	April	08 -2020	August	12 -2020	December

4. Date of the bill: The date of the consolidated monthly disclosure shall be mentioned.

5. Total line amount: there should be recorded an amount which is the less of:

6. the amount of calls and rentals of the current month without the addition of any arrears for previous months. Each bill should be processed monthly in respect of the calls and rentals amount relevant to the said month; or

7. the due balance amount if its value is less than the value of the current month's calls and rentals as a result of processing credit amounts by the telephone company in the current month's bill.

8. The government entity shall send the detailed bills of each telephone and the standard monthly statement, the International Telephone Call Approval Forms (where required), and a proof of paying the costs of personal calls in the Government general account, attached with Invoice Register Report to the Directorate of Treasury at Ministry of Finance for reviewing and payment. The Directorate of Treasury may exempt the government entities connected to the E-billing service from sending the detailed bills. Sending the standard statements or any other agreed statements with Invoice Register Report will be quite enough.

.9 The Directorate of Treasury shall complete the procedures of reviewing and approving the bills.

Processing Local Payments

8.3.34 Local payments are processed according to the following procedures:

1.Supplier shall send the invoice to the Government Entity as and when due.
2.The concerned Directorate(s) in the Government Entity review the received invoice and ensure that all goods and/or services have been delivered in accordance to the agreed upon terms and conditions and that the invoice amount is as per the approved PO (or contract).
3.Government Entity enters and passes the payment request into the central financial system with the following attached:
4. Invoice
5.PO
6.Delivery Note or equivalent
7.Contract if applicable
8.Bank guarantee if applicable
9.Any other supporting documents
10.The payment request is then approved by the Government Entity in accordance to the approval limits.

11.The request is then received by the Treasury Directorate and reviewing the supporting documentation. Also the following is reviewed:

12.Matching of CR in the invoice with the supplier information recorded

13.Matching the accuracy of the invoice with the contract

14.Review the LPO

15.Review the Delivery note or equivalent

16.Review the invoice

17. Availability of prior approvals from government entities.

18. Completing all procurement procedures according to the requirements stipulated in the legislation issued to regulate government procurement.

19. Ensure proper allocation of the chapter in the CFS

20.If the order is correct and complete, the Treasury Directorate authorizes the payment according to the specified authority levels.

8.4 overseas payments

.8.4.1 All overseas payments from general government accounts should be made through the bank specified by the Directorate of Treasury.

.8.4.2 The Directorate of Treasury is the only party authorized to directly deal with banks in all matters related to the transfer of money from general government accounts overseas.

.8.4.3 Overseas payment procedures apply to any transactions exceeding BD 50.

Overseas Payments Procedure

.8.4.4 The following procedures show the general steps to be followed for issuing overseas payment instruments:

1. Supplier shall send the invoice to the Government Entity as and when due.
2. The concerned Directorate(s) in the Government Entity review the received invoice and ensure that all goods and/or services have been delivered in accordance to the agreed upon terms and conditions.
3. The government entity enters and passes the payment request into the central financial system with the following attached:
4. Invoice
5. PO
6. Delivery Note or equivalent
7. Contract if applicable
8. Invoice Register
9. Form no. MF 711 (Foreign Payment)
10. Payment Certificate no. – MF2504 if applicable
11. Any other relevant documents
12. The Treasury Department reviews the payment request and the supporting documents to ensure the completeness and correctness of the procedures, data and documents supporting the payment. It declares the payment in the system and sends the request to the bank to complete the necessary procedures for issuing the means of payment.
13. The Directorate of Treasury will receive from the bank the required payment instrument or the shipping documents and the deduction notice. Then it will
14. Check the bank's deduction notice against the overseas payment application;
15. Register the details of the overseas payments in the Accounts Payable System.

Procedures of Amending and Canceling Overseas Payment Requests

.8.4.5 The following steps shall be followed for amending or canceling any payment instrument previously applied for by the government entity:

1. Ensuring that there is an actual need for amending or canceling the overseas payment instrument, and that the amendment or cancellation does not conflict with the contract terms or the effective rules and regulations.
2. The government entity shall prepare the form No. MF 0713 – An Amendment/ Cancellation of an Overseas Payment – and approve it in accordance with the Authority Levels. Then it will send the application with the supporting documents for amendment to the Directorate of Treasury.

3.The Directorate of Treasury at Ministry of Finance shall check that the documents supporting the amendment or cancellation are complete and correct. Then it will complete the following procedures:

4.Registering the details of cancellation or amendment in the follow-up register of overseas payments.

5.Approving the cancellation / amendment application according the Authority Levels Manual and sending it to the bank to complete the required procedures.

6.Receiving the amendment or cancellation notice from the bank, and amending the registers of the Accounts Payable System on the basis of the amendment application details and the bank notice.

7.The government entity shall keep the documents after reviewing them and ensuring that the procedures are complete and correct.

Settlement of Government Payments Through Internet

.8.4.6 Financial cards mean all forms of cards that are used to pay for purchases made through the Internet, and they include prepaid cards and credit cards.

.8.4.7. The provisions and procedures governing the regular procurement process described in the recurring expenses section of this guide shall be applied to purchases using the financial card, including the provisions and procedures related to issuing purchase orders.

.8.4.8 The Directorate of Treasury Finance is authorized to negotiate and contract with banks & financial establishments to issue Financial Cards to government entities employees to settle government payments through internet network based on work requirements, and it is authorized to:

1. a. Approval of issuing financial cards for use by government entities.
2. Specify types and nature of purchases and situations that Financial Card could be used.
3. Agree with card Issuing Entity (Bank) on the credit limit for each card issued to Government entities.
4. Cancellation of Financial card in case the Government entity or the card user

does not comply with the provisions and procedures of this section, or for any other reason may require that.

5.Require any details from the card Issuing Entity (Bank) or the Government entity, and review the government payment vouchers through Financial cards to confirm the correctness of the transactions and payment amounts.

.8.4.9 The use of Financial cards is limited for settlement of purchases payments through Internet from suppliers outside Kingdom of Bahrain, and if the required goods and services are not available in the local market at suitable specifications and prices.

.8.4.10 The value of purchases made through financial cards must not exceed the credit limits allocated to each card, and the value of a single purchase transaction using the financial card must not exceed an amount of 200 dinars (not including the fees and interest that are calculated on the card account), unless approved by the Directorate of Treasury an amount higher than this limit if the need arises.

.8.4.11 Any benefits, points or rewards gained through owning or using these cards are due to the relevant government entity and may only be used for official purposes.

.8.4.12 The financial card that does not have the ability to pay or withdraw from electronic payment machines must be used whenever possible.

.8.4.13 Directorate of Treasury shall open a bank account for each Financial card, and the Card Issuing Entity (Bank) shall record all transactions related to

the use of the card in this account. Amounts due shall be paid in Bahraini Dinars at the prevailing exchange rate on the date of debiting the aforesaid amounts to the card account.

.8.4.14 The financial card is issued in the name of one of the employees specified by the Director of Financial Resources, and he is entrusted with the responsibility of keeping and using the card to pay government payments on behalf of the government entity, and the card may not be used by anyone other than the employee whose name appears on the card.

.8.4.15 Each authorized employee should not have more than one Financial card, and the cards should not be issued to non-government employees.

.8.4.16 Financial card should not be used for the following payments:

1.Settlement of local purchases payments.

2.Cash withdraw.

3.Transfer amounts from card account to personal accounts.

4.Settlement of non-government entitypurchases payments.

5.Settlement of personal purchases payments.

6.Settlement of unauthorized purchases payments according to the provisions of this Manual.

.8.4.17 Government entity should fulfill all procedures specified in this manual to pay the Financial card due amounts before the last date specified to settle the debit balance “Payment Due Date” to avoid any fees or interests on the remain

Card account balance.

.8.4.18 Directorate of Treasury and Directorate of Financial Resources at Government entity shall keep register for the Financial cards containing:
Card holder, Card type, Card category, issuing entity and credit limit.

Card User (HOLDER) Responsibilities:

.8.4.19 Card holder should comply with the following responsibilities when using the Financial card:

1.Use the Card to settle government purchases payments that the Financial card has been issued for.

2.Comply with procedures provisions specified in this manual in concern of process of government purchases payments, and conditions specified by the issuing entity (bank).

3.Not to exceed the approved credit limit.

4.Not to use his (her) personal address to receive goods.

5.Maintain secrecy of the card information, and take the necessary precautions to protect the Card, and not to be used by third party.

6.Immediately inform the issuing entity and the Directorate of Financial Resources of any lost, theft and forge, cheat or steal from the Card account.

7.A Bear any financial damage resulting by not immediately inform of any lost, theft and forge, cheat or steal from the Card account.

8.Bear all unauthorized purchases and expenses.

9.Review Card monthly statement of account with Directorate of Financial Resources to correct any incorrect amount in the statement.

10.Deliver the Card monthly statement of account to Directorate of Financial Resources within three working days after the receiving date or the publishing date.

.8.4.20 Employee Card holder should comply with the followings when shopping through electronic internet sites:

1.Deal with well-known, reputable sites and companies.

2.Insure the availability of protection programs at sites used, such as lock icon "Locked padlock" at the bottom of Internet explorer as evidence.

3.Investigate the correctness of electronic sites address, and its contents, as the protected site proceeded by "https" instead of "http".

4.Verify not to mix between original electronic sits and forged ones that quote the contents of the original sites and display it in similar page "Spoofing" or "Page jacking".

5.Print the required page site address in the Internet explorer specified field, instead of selecting it from the search engine.

6.Investigate site data form independent sources, such as review company address, telephone No., and its postal address.

Financial card Issue Procedures:

.8.4.21 The application for issuing a financial card is processed according to the following procedures:

1.Government entity will send request to Directorate of Treasury, to issue

Financial card.

2.Directorate of Treasury at will review the request, complete procedures of filling request Financial card form issued by the Card Issuing Entity, Sign it by the Director of Treasury, and send it to the Card Issuing Entity.

3.Directorate of Treasury will receive the Financial card and send it to the concerned government entity, to be delivered to the concerned employee.

4.The concerned employee will sign on a promise to confirm receiving of the card and to comply with conduct conditions and procedures specified in this manual for the use of the card.

5.Government authority and Directorate of Treasury will record the Financial card data in special register.

Financial card Cancellation:

.8.4.22 In the following cases Directorate Financial Resources at Government Entity will send a request for cancellation of the Financial card to Directorate of Treasury:

1.Absence the need of the Card.

2.Withdraw the Card from the employee.

3.If the employee in a long leave (for more than three months).

4.In employee resignation.

5.Issue replacement Card.

.8.4.23 When the government entity decides to cancel the financial card, it addresses the Directorate of Treasury to take the necessary measures to cancel the card as of the date specified in the cancellation request, and after the request is fulfilled, the Treasury Directorate sends the cancellation notice to the government entity requesting the request.

.8.4.24 In case of lost, theft and forge, cheat or steal from the Card account, Card should be cancelled according to the following procedures:

1.Cardholder (employee) should inform the issuing Card entity to cancel the Card immediately after discovering the lost or theft of the Card and forge, cheat or steal from the Card account.

2.He should inform Directorate Financial Resources at the concerned Government entity of the Card cancellation decision within next working day, with reasons and date of cancellation.

3.Directorate of Financial Resources at the concerned Government entity will inform Directorate of Treasury of the Card cancellation decision, at the same day of receiving the announcement from the Cardholder.

4.Directorate of Treasury will send a letter to the issuing Card entity (bank) to confirm Card cancellation request, and send copy to the concerned Government entity.

5.Government entity and Directorate of Treasury will show the details of cancelled cards in the special register.

.8.2.5 A replacement card may not be issued to the financial card holder except

after completing the procedures for canceling the original card.

8.4.26. The Financial Resources Department must maintain all supporting documents related to purchases using financial cards, including order documents, invoices, payment and receipt.

Review of Card statement of account:

8.4.27. The financial card account statement is reviewed according to the following procedures:

1.The Card holder will verify its correctness, and send it to the directorate of Financial Resources at the government entity within three working days from the date of receive of the statement or the issue date

2.Directorate of Financial Resources will review the Financial card statement of account according to the followings:

3.Review the transactions data in the statement with receipts and cash memos, or the electronic purchase request form and cargo lists and delivery notes.

4.Ask the Cardholder to present any uncompleted supporting documents.

5.Verify that the Card statement of account does not include any personal or unauthorized purchases.

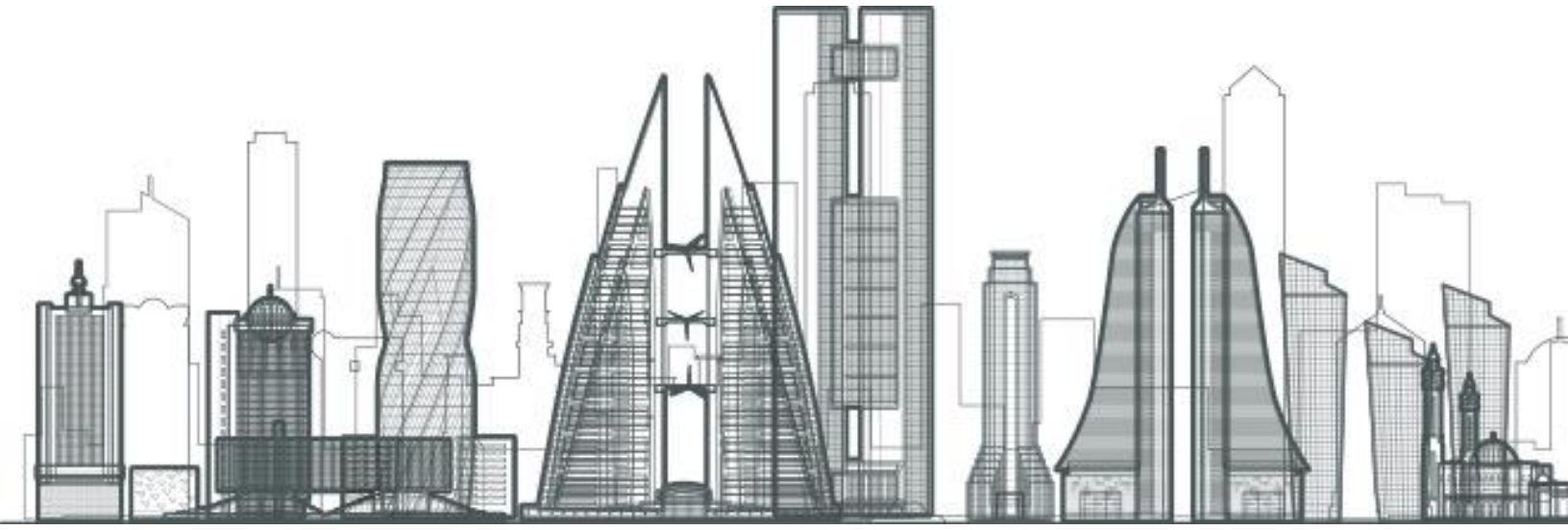
6.Inform the issuing Card entity (bank) of any incorrect or unauthorized financial transactions, or for any disputed transactions with the suppliers mentioned in the Card statement of account.

7.Government entity will prepare internal invoice Form No. MF0708- for the due amount in the Card statement of account, and record the due payments in payment system taking into account payment classifications.

8.Government entity will send Form No. FMISAP002- to the Directorate of Treasury along with the Financial card statement of account and the internal invoice, within maximum of ten working days of the receive of the Card statement of account.

9.Directorate of Treasury will review and process the payments and pay the due amount to the issuing Card entity (bank).

9. Claims and Compensation



Section summary and responsibilities	
General description of the section	This section covers the general policies and procedures related to processing claims from or against suppliers for payment of dues for business or losses related to contracts to carry out works for the government, and also covers claims for compensation for expropriations made by the government and for insured and uninsured damages owed to others.
Directorates supervising the section operations	• Treasury Directorate - overseeing the process of making government payments to suppliers and other eligible parties. • Project Financing Directorate - overseeing the payment of compensation for expropriations by the government to establish projects.

9.1. Claims on suppliers

9.1.1. Claims mean a request to obtain a benefit that the plaintiff believes has the right to obtain, and these claims may be made by government entities against suppliers or vice versa.

9.1.2 The Government entity then proceeds with preparing a Claim Qualification Report, structured in the following format:

a. **Introduction** Provides the background details to the project, which includes the following at a minimum:

b. Names of the parties of the contract

c. Details of the conditions governing the contract;

d. The tender date;

e. The original contract sum;

f. Dates for possession and completion;

g. Details of extensions of time claimed;

h. Details and amounts of money claimed;

i. Details of extensions of time awarded, and

j. Details of amounts certified

k. **Contractual and/or legal basis of the** claim State precisely about the event(s) pertaining to the claim and the contractual basis of the claim and specify whether it is:

1. A claim for loss and expense or extra costs or expense flowing from a remedy contained within the conditions themselves; and/or
2. A claim for damages resultant upon a breach of the express or implied terms of the contract or the law.

l. **Details of the claim;** include the following:

1. Provide the complete details, as much as possible, of the event that triggered the claim ("the event") including all relevant documents relating thereto.
2. The details must also include explanation of all delays with reasons, responsibility and effect on the overall progress, period/date to which

the claim relates. There must be a detailing of the cause and effect using any method.

m. **Provide the estimate of the claim**; this should be in accordance with the methodology of arriving at the estimated cost prescribed in the contract. The calculations should also be provided as a support to the final estimate.

n. **Appendices**, must include the following:

1. Copy of the contract or agreement and all relevant contract documents;
2. Any work order to the claim.

Government claims against suppliers

.9.1.3 Claims against suppliers are processed according to the following procedures:

A. The government entity submits the claims to the Legal Affairs Office at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for review and consideration before submitting the claim against the supplier.

B. After the Legal Affairs Office reviews and approves the claim, the government entity sends the "claim qualification" to the supplier within the agreed time according to the contract, and notifies the Shared Financial Services Sector or Project Finance Directorate, depending on the nature of the disbursement to which the claim relates.

C. If the supplier does not settle the claim within the agreed time frame, the government entity shall inform the Shared Financial Services Sector or the Project Finance Directorate, depending on the nature of the disbursement to which the claim relates, and the Treasury Directorate to take the necessary action.

Supplier claims against government entities

.9.1.4 To accept any claim, the following is required:

A. To be within the time frame specified by the agreed purchase contract.

B. Be supported by evidence, supporting evidence and a detailed case description.

C. Not be related to a case previously considered and decided upon.

9.1.5. The claims received are processed according to the following procedures:

A. The supplier submits a "notice of claim specification" regarding a specific work to the project coordinator or the director of financial resources in the relevant government entity, within 45 working days (unless the contract stipulates otherwise) from the completion of an independent phase or a series of stages related to each other, and attach what Explains the following:

B. Statement of claim.

C. Scope and terms of the contract.

D. Description of the additional work done and the relevant phase.

E. Impact and estimated cost.

F. The government entity submits the claim to the Legal Affairs Office at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for review and consideration.

G. The government entity evaluates the claim and reviews it internally to find out the legal and financial implications of accepting it and expressing its observations, then informing the Shared Financial Services Sector or Project Finance Directorate, according to the nature of the disbursement to which the claim relates, and the Treasury Directorate of the existence of a potential claim.

H. The supplier is then required to submit a "claim qualification", and the government entity must not, under any circumstances, provide the applicant with acceptance of the claim at this stage.

I. Upon receipt, the claimant supplier is provided with the confirmation of receipt of the claim qualification report, then the claim report is reviewed with the concerned parties, and an action plan is agreed upon, recommendations are identified, and the supplier negotiated to reach a final agreement.

V. Once a decision and agreement is reached, the supplier and the concerned government entity sign a document that is legally binding on the terms and

conditions agreed upon for settlement, and this document should exempt the government from any other claims arising from the same situation.

K. When it is decided to disburse any amounts to the plaintiff supplier, the government entity shall notify the Treasury Directorate to disburse the compensation, along with the claim agreement.

.9.2 Compensation to a Third Party

Compensation for uninsured material damages

.9.2.1 It is not permissible to compensate for material damages caused by the government, except upon a request / grievance from the aggrieved person for

compensation for the material damages that he suffered, provided that this request / grievance indicates:

1. Damage suffered;
2. Cause of the damage;
3. The person / entity responsible for the occurrence of the damages.
4. Its relation to the money or the person's subject of the damage.
5. The chosen place.

.9.2.2 Unless the law governing the type of compensation stipulates otherwise, The Government Entity authority forms a committee with the responsibility to examine the case and estimate the extent of the damage, provided that it includes technical and legal elements, and the committee may seek the assistance of external technical expertise to estimate the amount of compensation.

.9.2.3 The designated committee commences in above point .9.2.2 must reason its decisions issued in the requests submitted to it, and these decisions shall be approved by the competent authority in accordance with the provisions and procedures mentioned in the law regulating the type of compensation subject to the decision, provided that the compensation decision includes the following elements:

a. Reference to the applicable law regarding the claim and reimbursement;
b. Details of the incident, its causes and extent of the damage;
c. Value of the damage caused,
d. Details of the claimant third party and relation to the compensation;
e. Findings from the cause and effect analysis conducted;
f. Confirmation of the absence of special insurance coverage for the damage subject to compensation.
g. Criteria that were followed to estimate the amount of compensation.
h. The amount of compensation in numbers and letters.

9.2.4. The government entity must obtain an acknowledgment from the Ministry of Finance and National Economy that sufficient funds are available to cover the compensation value, by sending the form “Request for Sufficient Budget Acknowledgment” No. (MF401) to the Budget Directorate or Project Finance Directorate according to the type of budget from which the compensation amount is deducted, Before notifying the beneficiary of his entitlement to the compensation amount, provided that all supporting documents are attached to the form, and in particular the following:

a. Compensation request submitted by the beneficiary.

b. The reasoned compensation decision issued by the competent committee.

c. Documents proving the material error against the government entity.

d. Documents indicating the status of the beneficiary (ownership documents, rent, etc.).

e. The documents supporting the estimation of the compensation amount.

h. The measures taken by the government entity to prevent the recurrence of the damage.

9.2.5. The Budget Directorate or Project Finance Directorate, as the case may be, after coordination with the Treasury Directorate, makes sure that the necessary funds are available to meet the compensation amount, and that the procedures and supporting documents are correct and complete. And if approved, the budget is reserved for the compensation value and a form “Request for sufficient budget acknowledgement” No. (MF-401) is approved and returning it to the government entity. The approved form is considered an acknowledgment of the availability of the necessary funds to cover the amount of compensation.

9.2.6. The budget seizure expires if the fiscal year in which it was approved has expired and the compensation has not been disbursed, and the government entity must submit a new application to obtain an acknowledgment of the availability of the necessary budget for compensation when the previous request ends.

9.2.7. If the Ministry of Finance and National Economy makes observations or reservations about the compensation decision or its documents, the concerned government entity must respond to them within ten working days at most from the date of its notification of these reservations or observations.

9.2.8. Once the government entity receives the approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy of the availability of funds, the government entity shall notify the beneficiary of the decision and the amount of the compensation determined, according to a registered letter with acknowledgment of receipt at his chosen place, provided that the notification includes the place and time at which the beneficiary must submit to sign the declaration by agreeing to the amount of compensation decided.

9.2.9. After the beneficiary acknowledges the approval of the compensation amount, the government entity sends that acknowledgment to the Treasury Directorate to complete the payment of the compensation value to the beneficiary.

9.2.10. If the beneficiary submits a grievance or appeal against the decision or the amount of compensation decided, in accordance with the provisions and procedures set forth in the law governing compensation, the procedures for paying the compensation amount will be suspended until the final decision on the grievance or the final judgment in the appeal is issued, as the case may be.

9.2.11. If the payment of the compensation value is based on a check, the check shall be sent to the relevant government entity to deliver it to the beneficiary, and in this case, the government entity shall notify him of the place and time of receipt of the check, according to a registered letter with acknowledgment of receipt on its chosen place and specified in the compensation request.

9.2.12. In all cases, the procedures for disbursing the determined compensation to the beneficiary must be completed within a period not exceeding forty days from the date of the beneficiary’s approval of the compensation amount, the issuance of the final decision on the grievance, or the final ruling on the appeal, according to the circumstances.

Compensation for insured material damages

9.2.13. The government entity shall notify the Insurance Department of the claims for compensation for the insured damages, which are covered by any of the applicable central insurance policies, provided that the following shall be attached to this notification:

A. The request submitted by the beneficiary for compensation for the damages caused to him, indicating his chosen location.

B. A report from the government entity about the facts related to the compensation request that prove the error, the damage inflicted on the beneficiary, and the causal relationship between the error and the damage.

C. Any documents or information related to the facts in question.

1.1.39.

9.2.14. The insured claim for damages is subject to the provisions and procedures specified in the insurance section of this manual.

9.2.15. If the damages claimed for compensation arise as a result of actions the government entity has contracted to implement with a person, and these acts or damages are included in the guarantee in accordance with the terms of the contract, the government entity must take measures to deduct the amount of compensation decided from the execution guarantee or the contractor’s dues, or a claim the insured entity or the contracting party - friendly or judicially - for the compensation, as the case may be.

9.2.16. The deduction or claim procedure referred to in paragraph 9.2.15 does not prevent the relevant government entity from taking measures to disburse compensation according to the provisions and procedures mentioned in this system.

9.2.17. The same provisions and procedures related to compensation for uninsured material damages shall be applied to compensation for insured material damages, as long as they do not contradict the provisions of the first.

9.3. Compensation for acquisition for public welfare purposes

Introduction

.9.3.1. This system deals with the financial provisions and procedures regulating the disbursement of government compensation for the acquisition or appropriation of real estate for the public welfare.

.9.3.2 For the purposes of implementing the provisions of this regulation, the following terms shall have the meanings indicated next to each of them, unless the context of the text requires otherwise:

- **Acquisition Law:** Law No. (39) of 2009 regarding appropriation of real estate for the welfare benefit, and any amendments thereto.

- **Real estate:** Everything that is stable and has a fixed place in it that cannot be moved without damage or change in its appearance, including vacant lands and buildings.
- **The Expropriating Entity:** The party requesting the expropriation or for which an expropriation decision is issued, whether it is a government entity such as ministries and its affiliated agencies or public institutions and bodies, municipalities and public legal persons.
- **Right holder:** everyone who has a real or personal right over the real estate subject of acquisition or temporary seizure other than the owner of the property.
- **Valuation Committee:** A real estate valuation committee that is the subject of acquisition formed in accordance with the acquisition law.
- **Grievance Committee:** The grievance committee for acquisition and valuation decisions formed in accordance with the acquisition law.
- **Ministry of Municipalities:** The Ministry concerned with municipal affairs.
- **Minister of Municipalities:** Minister concerned with municipal affairs.
- **Beneficiary:** The person for whom the compensation decision was issued, in his name or in his interest.
- **Chosen place:** the address that the person chooses to receive notifications and correspondence.

General Policies and Procedure

.9.3.3 It is not permissible for any government entity to request the acquisition of any real estate, unless there are approved appropriations for the acquisition or for the project to be constructed or executed on the real estate required to be appropriated, and that the appropriations allocated for the project in the budget of this entity are sufficient to cover compensation for the acquisition of all the real estate necessary to implement the project.

9.3.4. If the expropriating entity intends to compensate in kind for the real estate required to be acquired under alternative privately owned state-owned real estate, then it must obtain in advance the Royal Court approval for the allocation of alternative lands to compensate for the properties required to be appropriated.

.9.3.5 The concerned Directorate of the expropriation government prepares the below listed information and forwards the request via formal letter to the Acquisition and compensation Directorate for providing an initial valuation of the estate(s) of all properties that fall within the project under implementation, and which are required to be acquired for the implementation of this project, provided that the following is attached to the application:

1. The name of the project for which the property is to be acquired.

2. Reasons acquiring the estate for public welfare.

3. Details on the estate

4. Schematic of the property location, its area and other relevant details.

5. Certificate from the SLRB regarding its registration status.

6. The name of all the property owners as per the SLRB records.

7. Only in the case where another government estate is used as a means of exchange the Royal Court's approval is required.

.9.3.6 It is the responsibility of the Valuation Committee (or any other specialized committee) as determined by the Minister of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning ("MWMUP") for evaluating estate(s) for budgetary purposes. By the estimated valuation of the total real estate required to be acquired for that project, as well as the total alternative real estate, if any.

.9.3.7 The Expropriating Entity must obtain a declaration from the Project Finance Directorate of the availability of sufficient funds to cover the compensation value by using the form "Request for sufficient budget acknowledgement" No. (MF401), before addressing the Ministry of Municipalities to acquire the required real estate, includes the following statement in the comment box of the Form: "The MOFNE is authorized to effect payments for compensating by the Valuation Committee or the Grievance Committee" All specified data and documents shall be attached to the form, in addition to the estimated valuation of the real estate required to be acquired.

.9.3.8. The Project Finance Directorate shall ensure that sufficient funds are available to cover the necessary cash compensation for all real estate required to be acquired for the project for which this approval is allocated, and that the procedures and supporting documents are sound and complete, taking into account the deduction of the value of the alternative lands allocated for in-kind compensation, if any, and in case the application is approved. The initial reservation is made at the estimated valuation from the budget approved for this purpose and the form is returned - after its approval - to the expropriating entity.

.9.3.9 The Project Finance Directorate then creates a PO for the acquisition, based on the evaluation amount.

9.3.10. The validity period for the initial seizure ends with the lapse of five months from the date of approval of the “Request for sufficient budget acknowledgement” Form No. (MF401) by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy or the end of the fiscal year in which it was approved, whichever is earlier.

9.3.11. If the decision to acquire the specified real estate is not issued during the period of validity of the initial seizure, and more than five months have passed since the estimated valuation, the expropriating entity must repeat the procedures of the appraisal before it begins to renew the application for obtaining the declaration of the availability of funds.

9.3.12. The expropriating entity is required to obtain the prior approval of the Council of Ministers before it begins to take the measures specified by the acquisition law, provided that the application submitted to the Council of Ministers shall be attached to the “Request for sufficient budget acknowledgement” Form No. (MF401), and the Royal Court approval for the allocation of alternative real estate for compensation in kind (if any).

9.3.13. The concerned minister or head of the expropriating entity submits a request to acquire the real estate required for the implementation of the project to the Ministry of Municipalities, provided that this request includes all the specified data and documents, in addition to the estimated valuation, and the “Request for sufficient budget acknowledgement” form No. (MF401) approved by the Projects Finance Directorate, and the cabinet approval.

9.3.14. The Ministry of Municipalities shall study the acquisition request submitted by the expropriating entity, in terms of the application's agreement with the acquisition law, regulations and decisions issued in implementation thereof and this system, and make sure that there is no conflict between the application

submitted by the government entity and other expropriation requests from other parties, before issuing the acquisition decision.

9.3.15. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate must obtain a survey certificate for the property acquired from the Survey and Land Registration Bureau, indicating the area of the property in square meters, unless the acquisition is complete and the ownership document shows the area of the property in square meters.

9.3.16. The Minister of Municipalities issues the acquisition decision in the name of the person whose name is registered as the owner of the property in the real estate newspaper in the Land Registry at the Survey and Land Registration Bureau, and if the property is not registered, the person who seizes it upon acquisition is considered the owner of the right in it, and whoever claims ownership of the property, real right, or possession must file a lawsuit to prove what he claims.

9.3.17. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate publishes the acquisition decision accompanied by a detailed statement of the property within thirty days from the date of its issuance, in accordance with the procedures specified in the acquisition law.

9.3.18. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate shall compile acquisition decisions related to one project, and publish them in a combined announcement that includes a unified map of the project, and the basic data for each property within this project, whenever possible.

9.3.19. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate shall notify the following authorities with a copy of the acquisition decision within ten working days from the date of its issuance (not exceeding fourteen days from the date of the acquisition decision), in accordance with the procedures specified in the acquisition law and the regulations and decisions issued in implementation thereof:

A. The owner of the expropriating property and the right holders.

B. Survey and Land Registration Bureau.

C. Documentation Office at the Ministry of Justice.

D. The Expropriating entity.

E. The municipality concerned.

F. Project Finance Directorate.

9.3.20. Upon receipt of the original ownership document for the property acquired from the Survey and Land Registration Authority, the expropriating entity is obligated to send it to the Governmental Property Affairs Directorate at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, and keep a copy of it in its appropriated property file.

9.3.21. Upon receiving the acquisition decision, the Project Finance Directorate confirms the initial reservation that it made, based on an estimated evaluation, until the end of the compensation payment procedures to the beneficiaries.

9.3.22. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate shall refer the acquisition decision to the Evaluation Committee within a week of the issuance of the decision, accompanied by all the documents, data and notes received by it, and a report explaining the opinion of the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate in this regard.

9.3.23. Any person concerned, including owners and rights holders, may file a grievance against the acquisition decision or the data it contains to the Grievance Committee, within forty-five days from the date of publication of the decision, otherwise his right to this grievance will be forfeited, in accordance with the procedures stipulated in the Acquisition Law.

9.3.24. If the grievance against the expropriation decision or the data it contains is based on the incorrectness of the decision itself, the compensation payment procedures must be stopped, until the grievance committee’s decision is issued, whether explicitly rejecting the grievance or implicit by the lapse of thirty days from the date the grievance is referred to it without adjudicating it, whichever closer.

9.3.25. The evaluation committee shall assess the value of the compensation due for the entire acquired property - with its buildings, plantings, dispositions, contracts, and any personal or in-kind rights contained in the property - on the basis of the market value of the acquired property on the date of publishing the acquisition decision in the area in which the property is located or nearby or similar areas Depending on the circumstances, the existence of in-kind rights (such as usufruct) or personal (such as a lease contract) related to the acquired property does not affect the unit of the compensation amount determined for the entire acquired property, all in accordance with the controls referred to in the acquisition law and the regulations and decisions issued in implementation thereof.

9.3.26. The market value of the acquired real estate includes the value of buildings, plants, contracts (such as rent and bare) or dispositions (such as usufruct or rent) that are received on the property, unless it is proven that any of this was done with the purpose of raising the value of the property's valuation and obtaining compensation in excess of the receivable, and the establishment, construction, or determination of any of that after publishing the acquisition decision is an evidence that it was done with the intention of raising the value of the property, unless proven otherwise.

9.3.27. If any rights in kind or personal property are related to the subject of the acquisition, with a fixed date when the acquisition decision is published, the market value of the acquired property is estimated twice, The first: the market value of the property without the rights set forth on it, and the second: the market value of the property loaded with the rights contained therein, and the difference between the two values is the amount of compensation decided for the right owners, and the rest of the value is the amount of compensation decided for the owner.

9.3.28. The compensation for the acquired real estate may be in cash or in kind, or both (mixed).

9.3.29. In the case of compensation in kind, the compensation may be for land in the same area in which the acquired real estate is located or elsewhere, provided that there is a royal court approval to allocate alternative lands to compensate for the real estate required to be acquired, and in this case the valuation committee assesses the market value of each of the acquired real estate and the alternative land, and if their two values differ, then the expropriating entity must determine the difference between the two values and the party entitled to this difference (the beneficiary or the expropriating entity).

9.3.30. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate, as soon as the evaluation committee's decision is issued - and before notifying the beneficiary - must send the final reservation request for the amount of compensation due for the expropriated property from the financial appropriation set for this purpose in the budget of the expropriating entity, to the Project Finance Directorate, accompanied by all the supporting documents.

9.3.31. The Project Finance Directorate, in coordination with the Treasury Directorate, ensures the correctness and completeness of the acquisition procedures and the availability of all the required payment documents attached to the final

seizure request for the amount of compensation, and in the event that it has any notes about the request, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate must take the necessary measures to correct it and provide the Projects Finance Directorate with any additional data, information or documents that require to complete the procedures for determining the application.

9.3.32. The Project Financing Directorate, in the event of approval to disbursement of compensation, shall carry out the final reservation in coordination with the Treasury Directorate, and notify the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate accordingly within ten working days at most from the date of the request or from the date of avoiding notes or completing the required data.

9.3.33. Once the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate receives the notice of final seizure execution, it must notify the owners of the expropriated real estate, the owners of rights thereon, and the expropriating entity of the amount and type of compensation, in accordance with the procedures stipulated in the Acquisition Law.

9.3.34. If the owner of the acquired property refuses to compensate with an alternative land, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate may take measures to sell the alternative land by means of public auction in closed envelopes in accordance with the procedures mentioned in Decree-Law No. (36) of 2002 regarding the regulation of government tenders, auctions, purchases and sales, and the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate must Regardless of the procedures for selling the alternative land or the price that was collected from the sale - continue the procedures for disbursing the monetary compensation to the beneficiary on the basis of the compensation amount specified by the evaluation committee for the acquired property

9.3.35. If the beneficiary accepts compensation in kind, or mixed compensation, and pays the difference owed - if any - to the acquisition and compensation Directorate, for the account of the expropriating entity, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate notifies the Survey and Land Registration Authority of the committee's decision accompanied by the royal court approval to register the property in the name of the beneficiary, as soon as the deadlines are missed. grievance or determination of grievance, explicitly or implicitly.

9.3.36. The owner of the expropriated real estate, the owners of the rights to it and the expropriating entity shall have the right to grievance against the decision of the valuation committee to estimate the compensation value within 45 days from the

date of their notification or from the date of its publication in accordance with the procedures stipulated in the Acquisition Law, otherwise their right to appeal shall be forfeited.

9.3.37. If the owners, rights holders, or the expropriating entity do not file a grievance within the specified period, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate must, within a period not exceeding ten working days, send a request to disburse the compensation amount to the beneficiaries to the Treasury Directorate, accompanied by all documents supporting the payment of compensation, and a copy of the above to The Expropriation entity.

9.3.38. If the expropriating entity Grievance against the estimation of the compensation value, the procedures for disbursing compensation to all owners and rights holders shall cease, until the date on which the grievance is decided explicitly or implicitly, and if the grievance was submitted by the owner or the right holders, then the suspension of the disbursement is limited only to the one who made the grievance.

9.3.39. The grievance committee must decide on the grievance within thirty days from the date of referring it to it, and the lapse of this period without deciding on the grievance is considered an implicit rejection of it, and the committee must notify the complainant and the expropriating entity of the express decision issued by the committee according to a registered letter with acknowledgment of receipt of the specified selected location to file grievance within seven days from the date of the decision.

9.3.40. After the decision on the grievance is issued explicitly or considered implicitly rejected, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate must, within a period not exceeding ten working days from the date of the decision, send a request to disburse the compensation amount to the beneficiaries to the Treasury Directorate, accompanied by all the documents supporting the payment of compensation, and a copy of the above The Expropriating Entity.

9.3.41. The expropriating entity must authorize payments for compensation in the central financial system within a period not exceeding ten working days from receiving the documents, and the lapse of the aforementioned period without a permit by the expropriating entity shall be deemed an implicit declaration of payments, and the Treasury Directorate in this case may authorize compensation payments directly According to the procedures it deems appropriate.

9.3.42. The Treasury Directorate completes the procedures for authorizing the payments, issues a check for the compensation and submits it to the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate within a period not exceeding twenty business days from the date of passing the payment or the expiration of the period specified for passing it into the system by the expropriating enity.

9.3.43. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate shall, within a period not exceeding five working days from the date of receipt of the check, notify the beneficiary of the date and place of receipt of the check according to a registered letter with acknowledgment of receipt on his chosen place or on his place of residence known to the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate, provided that the period of receipt of the check does not exceed the period the remainder of the period specified for the payment of compensation minus five working days.

9.3.44. If the beneficiary does not have a known place of residence with the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate, or in the event that the check in the amount of compensation is not received by the beneficiary within the specified period, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate shall deliver the check to the General Registrar of the Court in accordance with the procedures specified in the Civil and Commercial Procedure Law promulgated by Decree-Law No. (12) for the year 1971, and its amendments, within five working days from the date of receiving the check from the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, or from the end of the period specified for receiving the check, as the case may be. This procedure is considered a judgmental disbursement of the compensation amount, and a clearing of the liability of the expropriating entity.

9.3.45. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate notifies the expropriating entity and the Treasury Directorate of what has been done regarding the cashing of the check, whether it is received by the beneficiary or deposited with the general registrar of the court.

9.3.46. In all cases, the payment of the compensation determined to the beneficiary must be completed - actually or judicially - within a period not exceeding ninety days from the date of the expiration of the deadline for grievance against the evaluation decision without submitting a grievance, or from the date of the decision on the grievance raised against him explicitly or implicitly.

9.3.47. Checks for compensation amounts are issued in the name of the owners whose names appear in the ownership document on a date prior to the date on which the acquisition decision is published, and according to their shares contained

therein, and any change made to the ownership document, whether in the names of the owners or the shares after the date of publishing the acquisition decision, is also not taken into consideration. Right holders, and in the event of the death of any of them, it is issued for the account of the heirs.

9.3.48. Checks are only delivered to the persons whose names appear on the face of the check, or to their legal heirs according to the legal duty, or to their authorized official agents who are authorized by the official power of attorney to receive checks on behalf of the principal, after they have signed a statement indicating receipt in the register prepared for that, with proof of his identity or the legal obligation or his agency, according to the circumstances, and in the event that the persons entitled to the check do not receive the check within the specified period, the check shall be delivered to the Registrar General of the Court.

9.3.49. If it is proven that the acquired real estate was seized or mortgaged as a security mortgage for one of the debts at the time of publication of the acquisition decision, then the payment of the compensation amount must be stopped in full, unless the compensation amount exceeds the value of the sum for which the pledge is made, or the amount of the debt for which the mortgage is subjected, and in this case it is disbursed to the beneficiary The difference between the two values, and the amount of the suspended compensation is not disbursed except after the consent of the right holders, or according to a final court ruling.

9.3.50. If a dispute arises about the ownership of the acquired real estate or any of the rights stipulated on it, the procedures for disbursing the amount of compensation for those whose right to the seized property arises shall be suspended until the dispute is finally resolved, whether amicably by the concession of the parties to the dispute, or by a final court ruling. Case The amount of compensation is paid to the person in whose favor the dispute is finally settled.

9.3.51. The budget for the project for which the real estate is acquired shall bear all the publishing costs related to the acquisition, and the fees for depositing compensation checks with the Registrar General of the Court.

9.3.52. The general provisions and procedures for expropriation set forth in this section shall be applied to the appropriation of endowment properties and appropriation for the purpose of planning or re-planning and temporary appropriation in a manner that does not conflict with the provisions of each of them.

Acquisition of Waqf Estates

.9.3.53 It is permissible to acquire Waqf estate unless the estate is registered as a place of worship.

.9.3.54 After the expropriator completes the evaluation procedures, and obtaining the approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy of the availability of the financial approval, all cases related to the acquisition of estates that are under Waqf shall be referred to the High Sharia Court for decision making. The case must be raised through the State's Cases Authority.

.9.3.55 Attached to the statement of the case referred to in Paragraph No. 9.5.54 All documents referred to in Clause 9.3.5.

39.3.56 As soon as the court's ruling of expropriation is issued, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate undertakes the completion of the evaluation and disbursement procedures in accordance with the general provisions and procedures for expropriation specified in this section.

.9.3.57 The respective Waqf council / committee / representative is the entitled beneficiary are considered, in this case, of the rights holders with regard to grievance and appeals against the value of compensation estimated by the evaluation committee.

9.3.58. Compensation is paid to the relevant Waqf council, as it is the authority competent to preserve the Waqf objects, in order to purchase a similar property and allocate it for the same aspects of the Waqf and the same conditions of the Waqf.

Acquisition for the purpose of planning and re-planning

.9.3.59 If the purpose of the acquisition is planning or re-planning, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate must, before starting the acquisition procedures, make an estimated valuation of the plots of land or real estate required to be acquired for this purpose, according to their market value before the planning or re-planning project is approved, and with the same valuation rules referred to in The general provisions and procedures for the expropriation specified in this section, and determining the basic estimated price of the aforementioned plots of lands or real estate after the approval of the project, taking into account the new classification thereof.

9.3.60. If the Ministry of Municipalities intends to compensate for the real estate required to be acquired in kind under alternative lands in other areas outside the planning or re-planning area, and these properties are privately owned by the state, then it must obtain prior royal court approval for the allocation of alternative lands to compensate for the properties required to be acquired.

9.3.61. The Acquisition and Compensation Directorate shall obtain a declaration from the Project Finance Directorate that sufficient funds are available to cover the estimated financial differences required to cover the cash compensation - if any - in accordance with the procedures referred to in the general provisions and procedures for expropriation specified in this section.

.9.3.62 All land acquisition cases for planning and re-planning must be presented to the Cabinet for approval by the Minister of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning. Attached to it is the data and documents referred to in the general provisions and procedures for expropriation specified in this section, in addition to the following:

1. The approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy of the availability of sufficient funds to cover the monetary compensation, if any.

2. Estate valuation before and after the planning and re-planning; and

3. Distribution of estate(s) on the current Estate(s) Owner(s) post completion of the project.

9.3.63. The expropriation decision shall be issued by the Council Of Ministers upon the proposal of the Minister of Municipalities, including the criteria for valuing the expropriated real estate before and after planning, as well as the rules and provisions for the distribution of plots of land subject to the planning or re-planning project, the decision shall be published with the same procedures followed regarding acquisition decisions issued by the Minister of Municipalities. And it has the same effects and consequences.

9.3.64. Once the acquisition decision is published, the matter is presented to the Evaluation Committee to make a final evaluation of the expropriated real estate according to its value on the date of publication of the decision, as well as to determine the basic price for each piece of project land after the implementation of the planning project or re-planning taking into account the new classification after the implementation of the project, in accordance with the evaluation rules Referred to in the general provisions and procedures for expropriation specified in this section, and the standards issued by the Council of Ministers, if any.

9.3.65 In the valuation of the properties expropriated for the purposes of planning or re-planning, the value of compensation should not be less than the value of the property before planning, and that it includes compensation for non-use of the acquired property for the period between the estimation of the value of the real estate and the estimated date for the payment of the compensation value, whether in cash or in kind.

.9.3.66 A committee must be formed by the Minister of Works, Municipalities and Urban Planning that is responsible for the distribution of the lands or estate(s) to the Owner(s), after completion of the planning and re-planning project. The committee's charter must clearly articulate its responsibilities and the procedures to be followed for the distribution of the lands or estate(s) and must be in line with the Cabinet's instructions.

.9.3.67 The committee in charge of distributing new lands or real estate shall offer alternative lands or real estate (whether they are plots of the new scheme's lands or others) to the owners of the properties that have been acquired, according to the arrangement and procedures specified in the decision to form the committee, on the basis of the basic price of each alternative property, and the amount of the estimated compensation for his expropriated property, which is determined by the evaluation committee.

9.3.68. If the owner agrees to compensation in kind, the differences are settled in favor of the entitled party (the beneficiary or the expropriating entity), And that is for the beneficiary to pay the difference to the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate if the expropriating entity is the owed the difference. Or, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate notifies the Treasury Directorate to complete the payment of the cash difference in favor of the beneficiary if he is the entitled party. This is a deduction from the budget approved for this purpose, and in accordance with the general provisions and procedures for expropriation specified in this section.

9.3.69. As soon as the settlement is completed and the legal deadlines for grievance have been missed, or the grievance is decided explicitly or implicitly in accordance with the procedures and dates established for grievance against decisions to acquire properties expropriated for public welfare, the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate notifies the Survey and Land Registration Authority to register the alternative property, provided that the royal court approval for compensation is attached to it if the alternative property was privately owned by the state.

Temporary Acquisition

.9.3.70 If the purpose of the government entity in acquiring the property is to temporarily acquisition it (such as: setting up temporary facilities or storing materials or tasks necessary for the implementation of a public benefit project, or seizing the property until the completion of the acquisition procedures), Therefore, the government entity requesting the requisition shall carry out the estimation procedures to compensate for the non-use of the property during the entire period of the temporary acquisition, and to obtain a declaration from the Project Finance Directorate of the availability of the financial appropriation for this, within the budget of the project for which the acquisition or compensation will take place, in accordance with the general provisions and procedures for expropriation specified in this section.

.9.3.71 Approvals for temporary acquisition of property may only be provided by the Prime Minister and must be raised by the Government Entity. Provided that this proposal shall be accompanied by the data and documents attached to the requisition request referred to in the general provisions and procedures for expropriation specified in this section.

9.3.72. Once the acquisition decision is published, the matter shall be submitted to the evaluation committee to estimate compensation for non-use of the property subject to temporary acquisition from the date of the actual acquisition until the completion of the procedures for acquiring it or returning it in the condition it was in, or for a period of one year, whichever is less, within thirty days from the date of publication Temporary acquisition decision.

.9.3.73 In case where the temporary acquisition exceeds one-year period, a revaluation of the amount of compensation for non-use of the property are repeated every following year.

9.3.74. By a decision of the Council of Ministers, the period of temporary acquisition may be extended so that the total period of the acquisition does not exceed three years. In case the period of acquisition is expected to exceed a period of three years, the policies related to the permanent acquisition of estate shall be applied.

9.3.75. If the beneficiary submits a grievance within thirty days from the date of being notified of the evaluation committee's decision, in accordance with the procedures established for grievance against the decisions of appropriation of properties expropriated for the public welfare, the compensation payment procedures shall be suspended until the grievance is settled explicitly or implicitly.

9.3.76. As an exception to the previous provisions, the Minister of Municipalities may, at the request of any of the competent government entities, in the event of a sinking or cutting a bridge or an outbreak of an epidemic, or for reasons of defense or security and all other emergency or urgent conditions specified by a decision of the Council of Ministers, to order the temporary aquisition On the real estate necessary to face these cases, without prejudice to the right of owners and rights holders to compensate for non-use of these real estate in accordance with the previous provisions and procedures specified in this section.

Corrective actions and follow-up

9.3.77. If the payment of compensation for damages or for expropriation is delayed for a period of more than six months from the due date for disbursement for any reason, the Acquisition and compensation Directorate must address the Ministry of

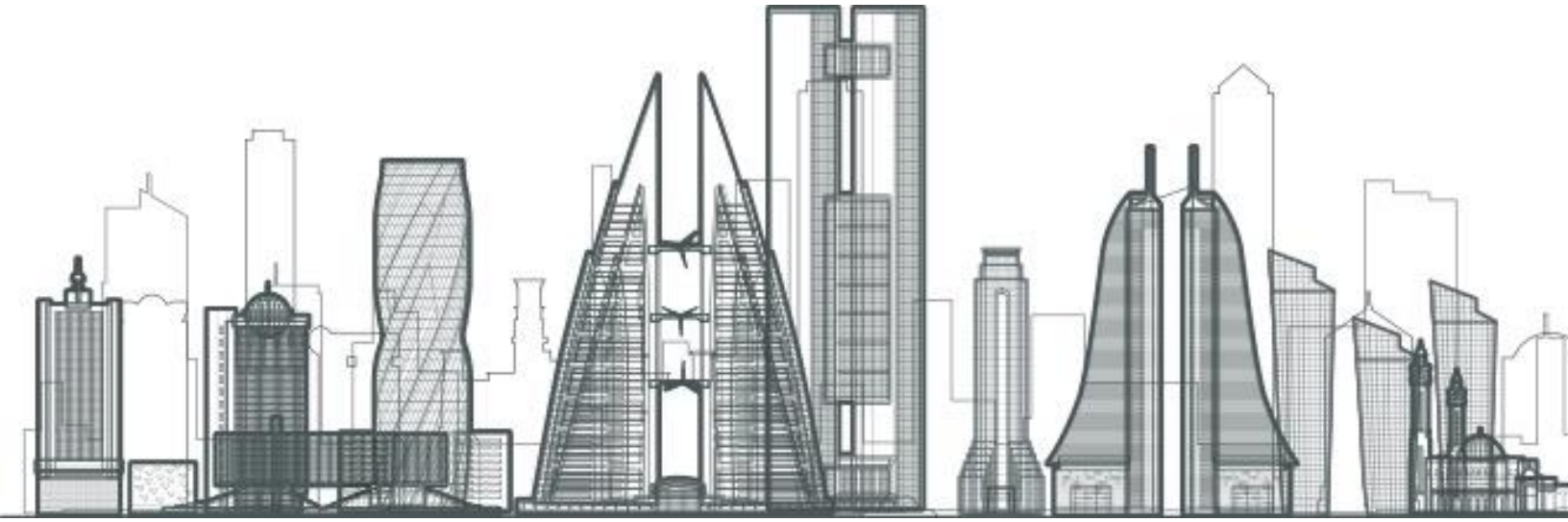
Finance and National Economy, about the reasons for the delay and its recommendations in this regard.

9.3.78. The Undersecretary of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy may form a joint committee from the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, and the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate that includes financial and legal elements to study the causes and remedy for delays in the payment of compensation so that the delay does not cause the government to bear any additional compensation.

9.3.79. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy may request from the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate all documents and information related to the expropriation of a project to review the extent to which the implementation conforms to the expropriation law and the regulations and decisions issued in implementation thereof and this system, and in this case the Acquisition and Compensation Directorate must provide the Ministry of Finance and National Economy with all documents and information Necessary within two weeks from the date of the request.

9.3.80. The Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning shall coordinate with the expropriating government entities to submit a statement of the value of all cash or in-kind compensation due from it to the relevant ministerial committee, provided that the aforementioned committee, after counting these claims, quickly decide on developing appropriate solutions that ensure that the right holder obtains a value Compensation for the acquired property, whether in cash or in kind.

10. Government Stores



General description of the section		
The coverage	Policies and procedures for controlling the inventory in government authorities.	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**The Directorate**	**The responsibilities**
	Financial Systems Development Directorate	- Setting and determining the control and accounting policies for inventory recording and controlling it.

10.1. Introduction and general provisions

Introduction

10.1.1. This section contains general provisions and procedures for controlling warehouses in government agencies and aims to:

A. Establishing general policies for storage and inventory and determining supervisory responsibilities on warehouses.

B. Provide accurate data and statistics indicating the movement of each item of inventory and actual balance to ensure that the stores are supplied in a timely manner and in the appropriate quantity.

C. Streamlining the warehouse procedures to suit the capabilities available for each type of warehouse, taking into account the practical conditions for providing sub-stores in remote locations and concentrating supervisory responsibilities in storage devices, whether management, department, inventory control units, and the clarity of the documentary cycle and its procedures.

D. The provisions of the control of government stores, whether internal or external, aimed at evaluation, improvement and performance development.

E. Identify the duties of stores workers and find the foundations for dividing inventory items and appropriate controls to control the use and return of permanent items.

F. Work to facilitate procedures associated with maintenance, repair, damage and sale.

General provisions

10.1.2. Purchases of goods and stored items must be subject to the terms and procedures of this manual.

10.1.3. All purchases of goods and materials must be subject to store control if their use is sustainable by virtue of their need, or the required quantity is sufficient to

consume at least for a month, for which the collection and exchange procedures apply and to control the movement of inventory.

10.1.4. The financial resources manager of the concerned authority must issue the necessary instructions to the purchasing and storage departments to coordinate the application of the store control procedures, including notifying the store administrator of all purchases of storage materials and providing copies of purchase orders for those materials.

10.1.5. The responsibilities of purchasing and storage must be separated, as well as between the receipt and disbursement of materials, the preparation of documents and the registration of the inventory card.

10.1.6. Goods and materials must be checked when receiving them to ensure their completeness, intactness, quality, validity and conformity to the required specifications, and goods and materials that violate the required specifications must be rejected and returned to the supplier.

10.1.7. A document of receipt of materials must be issued upon receipt of goods and materials received in stores, whatever the form of supply, whether by purchase, gifts, etc., and it is not permissible to use the books of documents receiving materials prior to the expiry of the papers of the book before it and in accordance with the numerical sequence of them, and in no case may issue more than one document for receipt of the same goods and materials, but a certified copy may be extracted from it when necessary or in the event of loss.

10.1.8. A request for the disbursement of materials must be prepared by the material applicant (beneficiary) for each subject that is required to be disbursed from the stores using form “Materials Issue Requisition” no. (17/2).

10.1.9. Goods and materials may not be stored to meet future needs beyond budgetary provisions.

10.1.10. Stores must be prepared in accordance with the nature of the stored materials and the expected duration of storage.

10.1.11. Stores should be organized in a way so it is easily to identify where each material is stored and storage areas should be numbered as well.

10.1.12. The viability of the stored materials must be monitored and the necessary measures should be taken to make the most of the stored materials before they expire.

10.1.1.13. It is important to keep cards for the stock of goods and materials, explaining the inventory number, the name of the stored item, the unit, the quantities received and the remaining quantities, and the reference number for receipt and exchange documents, using form no. (17/3), and the data of the materials received and disbursed from the stores must be recorded at once.

10.1.14. Keeping a record of costs in the Finance Department to calculate the costs of consuming goods and materials from stores for the beneficiary departments for supervision and evolution purposes.

10.1.15. The stores and their assets must be insured in accordance with the insurance policy specified in this manual.

10.1.16. The government entity should prepare a guide to commonly used materials and other materials that it is stored.

10.1.17. In the case of a sale of goods or items stored, the sales procedures are followed in accordance with the Tenders law and other related regulations.

10.1.18. All government entities using computers to monitor inventory must provide the basic data required to apply this system, specifically the following data:

A. The data required in the inventory card.

B. Issuing a document receiving material after it is entered into the computer.

C. Issuing a report on the disbursement of inventory materials from the computer.

D. Issuing reports on the movement of the inventory received and discharged for each item, covering any required period of time.

E. Issuing a comprehensive inventory report showing the inventory balance at the time of the report contains data on each item in terms of quantity, unit price and total value, as well as the total value of the inventory balance of all items.

F. Any other data deemed necessary by the relevant government entity is necessary for the nature of its work.

10.1.19. The store supervisor in the government entity that uses the computer in the operations of the stores should review the data issued in the daily reports of inputs and outputs of goods and materials and match them with the documents receiving materials and requests for the disbursement of materials and he should sign those data for the benefit of their review and validity.

Gifts, Donations and Grants

10.1.20. When receiving gifts, donations and grants they must be examined by the store supervisor and the specialized technicians can be used for microdevices, to show their status and then presented to the store and release a receiving materials document and prove the name of the donor and clarify the words (gifts, grants, donations) in the inventory card.

10.1.21. The disbursement of such items, such as devices and assets, shall be made on the basis of the authorization of the competent minister, while the consumables are disbursed with the permission of the competent director, and the request for the disbursement of materials is edited and registered in the inventory card, and a copy of the request and the documents supporting it are kept with the Director of Financial Resources of the Ministry concerned.

Custody

10.1.22. The Custody means any permanent item that is disbursed to the employee himself in accordance with the nature of the work performed by him such as medical supplies disbursed to the doctor and the equipment box for the worker to perform his task, or any materials or equipment that is spent to achieve, perform or facilitate a particular service.

10.1.23. The material or equipment disbursed as a custody of the employee must be recorded in the custody record from the material disbursement document that shows all information of the custody.

Custody Handover

10.1.24. When necessary to transfer a custody from a department, site or from one employee to another, the examination of the custody must be carried out by the provider and the recipient and under the supervision of the competent direct supervisor and prepare a protocol for the transfer of custody, which is adopted by the competent official and a copy is sent to:

A. Department or inventory control unit to conduct custody transfer entries.

B. Provider

C. Recipient.

Custody Responsibilities

10.1.25 The department is responsible for the items in its possession for use and its superiors must establish the necessary controls for proper control, and maintenance of these materials and equipment.

10.1.26. Those who hold personal custody of materials or equipment are fully responsible for them in terms of their use and maintenance until they fall from their custody.

10.2. Supervision of stores

general provisions

10.2.1. The stores authority in government entities is responsible for implementing the provisions of this system and supervising the work of the stores and coordinating with other departments of the ministry concerned in deciding their annual needs of various goods and materials as well as arranging, maintaining and caring of the goods and materials according to the appropriate methods to the nature of each commodity and providing safety and security means in the stores.

10.2.2. Stores shall have a head of stores to supervise the storage operations in the main store and its subsidiary stores and ensure that the stores are controlled, as well as oversees the necessary records.

10.2.3. The store has a supervisor who supervises and controls the movement of the inventory and is responsible to the head of the stores or the competent manager for the control of the records and assets of the store.

10.2.4. Each store has a store secretary who collects and dismisses the stored items and holds the inventory cards and is assisted by another store keeper who replaces him during his absence, and is responsible in solidarity with the store keeper, and signs with him the store's custody statements.

10.2.5. Store keepers are permanent employees, and if multiple trustees in one store they are in solidarity together.

10.2.6. Whenever a store keeper is appointed, transferred or terminated, the competent manager assigns one or more employees to monitor the recipient and delivery process, and sign the relevant records.

10.2.7. In cases where it is not possible to perform the recipient and delivery process, a committee is formed in the relevant government entity to open the store, inventory items and deliver them to the person who is assigned to receive them.

10.2.8. In government entities that do not have a store, and does not have a special secretary who assigns storage tasks to an existing financial affairs officer in addition to his work, is responsible for the items and tasks under his control, and must hold the necessary records and documents.

The functions and competences of stores staff

10.2.9. The responsibilities and competences exercised by the stores staff under this system represent the minimum control procedures for the supervision of the store's assets and the control of store records, in accordance with the principle of segregation of responsibilities and tasks and facilitating the obtaining of the required data from its various sources and conforming for the purposes of control and auditing.

The responsibilities of the head of store

10.2.10 The head of the stores shall be accountable to the competent manager and carry out the following tasks:

A. Supervising the organization of the stores in accordance with modern methods of storage and management of materials and applying the control provisions for storage specified in this section.

B. Supervising the work of store supervisors and trustees to ensure the progress of the work and the completion of the tasks accurately and thoroughly as well as to ensure that the store records are kept and updated first-hand by the supervisors and trustees of the stores each in relation to it.

C. Keep a manual of the specifications of the stored materials and update the data of this guide whenever needed.

D. Prepare estimates of the needs of the stores for goods and materials and provide them to the competent director to include those estimates in the budget allocations required for the relevant government entity.

E. Set the maximum and minimum limits for the stored materials as well as the re-order limit for each item of the stored items in accordance with the procedures specified in this section.

F. Preparing a report of damaged, lost or consumed materials and submitting it to the competent director, including its recommendations and action.

G. Propose adding any new material to the list of the consolidated manual of materials.

H. Preparing periodic reports of stores and approving inventory statements that are presented to them in order to benefit the validity of their data and to investigate the reasons for the differences in inventory balances (if any).

The responsibilities of the store supervisor

10.2.11. The store supervisor is accountable to the head of the stores or the competent manager and performs the following tasks:

A. Receipt and authorization of requests for disbursement and receipt of materials and referral to the store keeper to exchange and actual receipt of materials.

B. Hold the inventory movement control record (Template no. 17/5) to monitor the movement of each item of the store received and discharged by noting the date of the transaction, quantity, value and balance from the disbursement and receipt documents sent to it by the store keeper.

C. Inventory movement Control Record is the basis for monitoring and auditing purposes, and the store supervisor must take into account the accuracy of inventory movements entries and updating the data firs-hand from documents.

D. Reviews daily computer reports on the inputs and outputs of goods and materials, as well as matching them with receipt, disbursement and other documents attached to them.

E. Prepare a disclosure of the needs of the stores of goods and materials when the inventory reaches the point of re-order and submit it to the head of the stores or the competent manager to take the necessary measures to provide the stores with their required needs.

F. Prepare a disclosure of the status of the stagnant materials in the store as well as slow movement, including its recommendations on addressing the status of those materials.

G. Prepare a report on the rate of inventory turnover at the end of each fiscal year and compare it to the situation in the past year, including an explanation and justifications for the increase or decrease.

The responsibility of the store keeper

10.2.12. The store keeper is accountable to the head of the stores or the competent manager, and carries out the following tasks:

A. The store keeper organizes the processes of entering materials and taking them out of the stores as well as organizing inventory cards and recording the entries, and accompanies the inventory committee.

B. Receipt of items that are to be accepted after they have been matched by purchase orders or purchase contracts and sign the delivery notice issued by the supplier.

C. The disbursement of the stored materials with taking into consideration to disburse of the quantity that is nearly expired, full accuracy of this must be taken into account.

D. The store keeper should note the minimum stock of materials and inform the store supervisor in time to take the necessary measures to secure the supply of materials to the store, and provide him with requests for supplies for materials that reach the minimum stock and materials needed by the administration and are not present in the store, taking into account not exceeding the maximum inventory, and prepare requests for the supply of materials whenever needed.

E. The store keeper must submit statements every three months at most to the store supervisor for submission to the store head or the competent manager to take action on the items described below:

1. Redundant.
2. Dispensed.
3. Which is null and void.
4. Unusable.
5. Fear of damage.
6. Which has a certain validity period.

F. The store keeper may not give any information to those who are not responsible for the quantities, types and varieties in his possession.

G. The store keeper is personally responsible or in solidarity with other store keepers in case there is more than one of the items in his custody and their keeping, and care for them, and about the validity of their weight, number, size, type, and all that would expose them to damage, loss, and not give up his responsibility unless it is proven that this arose from compelling reasons or circumstances beyond his control, and was not possible to hedge them.

Receipt of material handling

procedures for receiving and handling materials

10.2.13. The handling of materials means dealing with goods, materials and equipment received and discharged from the stores in terms of the classification, storage and control of materials, procedures for receiving, examining and dispensing materials and holding stored records.

Receipt and inspection of materials

10.2.14. The storekeeper may initially receive the materials by signing the delivery notice issued by the supplier and take a copy of it, which is considered to be in the custody of the store keeper and may not be disbanded or disposed of before the completion of the examination procedures.

10.2.15. The competent manager or head of the stores may exclude the usual processing materials from the examination and only examine their condition by the competent department to determine their acceptance or rejection, and to organize the examination procedures must issue a list approved by the competent director of the usual materials excluded from the examination and update their data whenever necessary.

10.2.16. A committee is formed to examine and receive the supplied items headed by the head of the stores or who in his judgment and the membership of two employees of the government entity, one of whom is a staff member of the requesting entity of the materials, and in cases where technical expertise is required the committee includes one or more technical members.

10.2.17. The head of the stores or who in his judgment - for the materials to be examined by the competent examination committee - must take what is necessary to notify the Committee within two days at the most of receipt of the materials for

examination, provided that the examination committee is scheduled to be held as soon as possible from the date of receipt of the materials in the stores.

The procedure for examining materials

10.2.18. Materials will be examined as the following procedures state:

A. The committee shall conduct all necessary procedures for examining the materials, examining them, verifying their validity and conforming to the specifications specified in the purchase orders or contracts, and the Committee determines the percentage of examination and selection of samples so that they are representative of the materials to be examined.

B. A member of the committee is entrusted with preparing the minutes of the examination committee, including the committee's decision to accept or reject all or some of the materials, provided that this report is signed by the members of the committee and approved by the direct president.

C. The store keeper will sort out the materials that are to be accepted for those that are to be rejected, and initiate the process of receiving the materials to be accepted.

D. For materials to be rejected, the purchasing authority shall send a notification to the supplier, including the reasons for rejecting the materials, assigning him to transport rejected materials from stores and supplying new materials with the required specifications and at the same prices.

E. In case the supplier is late in receiving rejected goods and materials, he will be notified thru a registered letter to receive goods and materials within two weeks of its date, indicating that the government entity is not responsible for any harm to the goods as a result of the late pick up from his side and further measures will be taken in the case of not responding in the given period.

The procedure sought to receive the materials

10.2.19. The receipt of the materials is carried out in accordance with the following procedures:

A. The store keeper shall be competent to receive the materials that are decided to be accepted by the inspection committee or excluded from the examination after conforming to what is contained in the purchase orders or purchase contracts with the delivery notice issued by the supplier, and the store keeper must take into account

the full accuracy in verifying the type of materials received for the stores and their conformity to the specifications and their validity.

B. The store keeper prepares a material receipt document (Template no. 17/1) to benefit the receipt of the materials.

C. The store keeper will record the amount of material received in the inventory card (Template no. 17/3) and adjust the balance box in the same card accordingly, and send a copy of the material receipt document to the store supervisor.

D. The store supervisor records and enter the data of the material receipt document in the inventory movement control record (Template no. 17/5) and the entries are based on the quantity and value of the materials received.

The disbands of materials from stores

10.2.20. Follow the principle first in first out when the stored items are disbanded and the disbursement of the quantity that is nearly expired must be taken into account.

10.2.21. The materials are disbursed in accordance with the following procedures:

A. The department or section concerned requesting the material should prepare a request for the disbursement of materials (Template no. 17/2) of three copies and is approved by the direct president or the competent director according to the level of authority and send the request to the store official to disbands the materials.

B. After the approval of the request for the disbursement of materials by the store administrator, the store keeper will deliver the required materials to the beneficiary and get the recipient's signature on the request for the disbursement of materials (Template no. 17/2) to the benefit of receipt, and the beneficiary receives the third version of the request for preservation, and the store keeper keeps the first (white) copy of the order, and sends the second (pink) copy of the request mentioned to the store supervisor.

C. The store keeper records the quantity data spent on the inventory card (Template no. 17/3) and adjusts the inventory balance accordingly.

D. The store supervisor records the data of the ordered disbanded materials in the inventory movement control record, taking into account the accuracy and value of the quantity spent.

E. Keeping copies of the requests for disbands of materials with the material requester entity, as well as the store keeper and store supervisor, should be taken into account according to the priority of their dates and sequence.

10.3. Regulating stores and storage policies

The division of stores

10.3.1. Government stores are divided into four types according to the ministry's approved organizational structure.

A. Private main stores: those are the stores of government agencies specialized in the storage of goods and materials of their own nature, to meet the needs of their departments and units, and also supply their own and subsidiary stores in various locations.

B. Private sub-stores: those are the stores dependent on the main stores of the government entity, and are supplied with goods and materials from the main stores of the same ministry to meet the needs of departments and units in remote work sites.

10.3.2. Storage materials are divided into three categories:

A. Permanent items: include items of materials that are not consumed once used, and must be returned to stores if the purpose is finished or unusable, either for disposal or to be converted to another permanent item if possible (e.g. furniture, appliances, equipment, supplies of hospitals, schools and institutes).

B. Items intended for consumption: include items of materials that are consumed in direct use without leaving residues of its kind (e.g. food and biblical tools such as stationery).

C. Unusable items: Include items of materials that are to be excluded due to damage or it’s not possible to fix.

Supply stores

10.3.3. Government entities must prepare estimates of the needs of the stores for goods and materials according to a well-thought-out plan, and provide these estimates to the Financial Resources Directorate to take into account in preparing the estimated budget of the entity.

10.3.4. The employee in charge of the stores develops a program for the government's stores in accordance with the annual supply requirements provided to him by the stores, which is based on the preparation of the data received from the various directorates when preparing the ministry's budget.

10.3.5. Prices in supplying programs are estimated by a committee that for this purpose is formed by departments of stores, purchases, accounts and financial affairs, and is guided in its work by the prices of recent contracts unless there are justifications, which must be assessed on another basis.

10.3.6. When developing the government's supply policy, the government's supply policy is taken into account:

A. Provide all requirements of all items used.

B. The time required for supply.

C. Provide sufficient stock for the need to work until the start of the supply and receipt of the required goods and materials.

10.3.7. In drawing up the stores supply policy, it is necessary to specify both the minimum, the maximum, and the re-order of each item in the stores, and to prove these limits in the cards and records prepared for it.

Estimate the minimum and maximum inventory and the re-order limit

The minimum limit

10.3.8. The minimum stock of any material represents the balance to be available in the stores, taking into account the quantities required for the needs of the government entity during the supply period, the time required to supply goods and materials locally or overseas, and procurement procedures.

10.3.9. The minimum stock is calculated by dividing the quantity expected to be ordered during the quarter period by 90 and multiplying the output in the number of days it takes to supply from the date of purchase to the date of delivery in the stores.

The maximum limit

10.3.10. The stock balance of any item should always not exceed three times the minimum, taking into account the storing portability of items and their exposure to damage, the availability of items in the market as well as storage possibilities.

The re-order limits

10.3.11. It is not permissible to start purchasing procedures before making sure that the stock of the item to be purchased or the replacement item stock reaches the point of re-order and is calculated at 125% of the minimum stock for items that take 60 days and less and 200% for items that take longer to supply.

The Storage of materials

10.3.12. Each box or place of storage must be numbered and a card bearing the name and number of the material must be placed on it, taking into account the distinction between the new materials and the materials used.

10.3.13. The materials must be preserved in a way that does not expose them to damage, destruction or loss - depending on the nature of each material - and the government entity to do so to survey the opinion of the technical authorities concerned regarding the manner in which the material is preserved.

10.3.14. The store keeper must from time to time inspect materials that are scheduled for a certain shelf life or material that is inherently perishable due to weather factors or because of non-use, and present the result of the inspection to the store supervisor to take the necessary action in a timely manner.

10.3.15. When keeping storage materials, you should arrange them by expiration date so that the priority for the earliest date.

10.3.16. The store keeper shall be responsible for all damage, loss or destruction of the material he receives under his custody, unless it is established that this was caused by compelling circumstances beyond his control and could not be expected or destroyed.

10.3.17. No employee may authorize the admission of materials that are not related to the government entity for storage in stores such as deposits, personal trusts or similar.

The inventory disposal

10.3.18. The inventory is disposed and written off from records in case of damage, loss, full or partial depreciation.

10.3.19. Exclusion provisions and procedures provided for in the "Fixed Assets" Section no. (11) apply when inventory is excluded.

10.3.20. The excluded inventory is recorded as an allowance on the government entity.

10.4. Inventory of inventory

General annual inventory

10.4.1. All inventory items in all stores are comprehensively inventoried at least once a year, and an annual continuous inventory may be conducted without prejudice to the sudden inventory system during the year.

10.4.2. One or more inventory committees shall be formed by the decision of the relevant undersecretary, excluding officials of the stores trustees or the employees who manage it effectively, and this decision includes the exact date of the start of the work of the Committee, and the inventory is carried out under the direct supervision of the direct chairman, and in the case of the inventory of materials and technical equipment must include a member of the technicians specializing in those materials and tasks, and in all cases the inventory must be carried in the presence of the store keeper.

10.4.3. Stores of all types are inventoried at the end of the year, or on any other date where appropriate, and the inventory is mandatory in cases of death, or transfer to the store keepers

Inventory statements

10.4.4. The stores supervisor, in cooperation with the store keeper, prepares the inventory statements (Form no. 1705), including the basic data of the custody in terms of inventory items, quantities, price of their units and their total values, after which the Inventory Committee shall:

A. Inventory of items of material as an item by weight, size, number according to the unit installed in the records, stabilization of the balances already in place from inventory in inventory statements and showing inventory differences (if any) in the designated area for disclosure and inventory forecasting by committee members It is sent to the responsible accountant to complete the settling procedures.

B. In cases of urgent necessity, items may be disbanded or delivered, during inventory, provided that the inventory committee agrees, that receipt forms or disbands requests be deposited in temporary files until the completion of the inventory process.

C. The head of the stores or the person in his judgment shall sign the inventory statements stating that he acknowledges that the materials mentioned in these statements have been effectively inventoried, and then the statements are sent to the competent manager for comment in the box prepared for that.

Adjustment of inventory differences (deficit or surplus)

10.4.5. If there are differences between balances from the actual inventory and the balances on the inventory card, the responsible accountant will prove this difference in the inventory card and indicate it.

10.4.6. The responsible accountant will review the balance data and differences shown in the inventory statements and send them to the store keeper to explain the reasons for these differences in the box prepared for this statement within one week of receipt.

10.4.7. The stores supervisor shall prepare the form for receiving materials to settle the difference arising from the increase, or request the disbursement of materials to settle the difference resulting from the deficit and attach a copy of the inventory statement described to the increase or deficit and the chairman of the inventory committee, the head of the stores or the competent manager shall sign any of them.

Deducting or writing off the deficit

10.4.8. The competent director or his acting officer decides if the storekeeper is found to be responsible for the deficit - take the necessary measures to deduct the

value of this deficit from his salary or benefits, in accordance with the provisions of the civil service.

10.4.9. In the case of deficits caused by natural factors, the inventory statement (Form no. 1705) should be indicated in the current inventory balance and the previous inventory balance for each item, dates and quantities of the recipient and the expenditure during the period between each inventory and the percentages of the actual deficit compared to the permissible percentages by quantities stored, the duration of storage and the nature of each item.

Personal custody inventory

10.4.10. A statement must be obtained from employees who have personal custody of the permanent material that these materials are already in their custody and that they are in a usable condition, provided that the officer in charge of these declarations indicates that the material in question is in accordance with the records.

Annual declaration of inventory

10.4.11. At the end of each financial year, the competent director or acting director signs an acknowledgement that all materials in all of his stores - whether for sustainable, purpose-of-consumption or unusable materials - have already been inventoried, that there are no materials not covered by the inventory, that there are no items left in the stores that exceed the need or are not necessary for use and that what may be found are subjected to the prescribed procedures immediately to act upon, and that they are provided to the regulators upon request.

Sudden partial inventory

10.4.12. The accountant in charge of the financial resources directorate of the government entity concerned conducts an inventory on irregular dates for certain materials in the stores, taking into account the selection of random samples of materials, taking into account the fact that all materials and equipment at high cost are inventoried in the stores at least once during the year, and the responsible accountant proceeds with this type of inventory in accordance with the following procedures:

10.4.13. Records entries of the item’s balances selected on the inventory statements from the inventory movement control record.

10.4.14. It inventories the items of materials subject to the sudden inventory as an item by weight, measurement, or count according to the unit installed in the

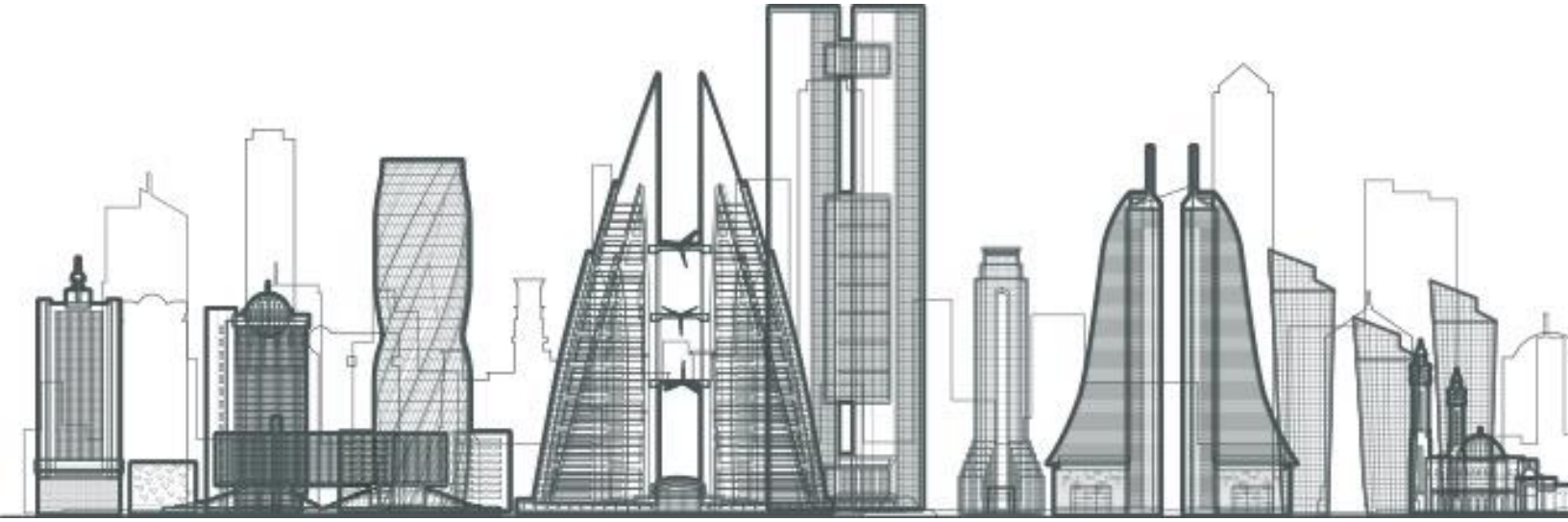
inventory card and confirms the balances that already exist from the inventory in the designated box of the inventory statement form and its signature.

10.4.15. Matches the balances in the inventory statement form (custody balances under inventory movement control record and actual inventory of materials) and records the differences, if any, in the designated box, and the accountant must investigate the reasons for those differences by reviewing the records, matching inventory movements entries and correcting the wrong entries in the records, and then send the statements to the store keeper to explain the reasons for the inventory differences within a week at most of the date of receipt, with the store keeper having to sign those statements indicating those differences.

10.4.16. The inventory statements are then sent to the competent manager for comment in the box intended for this.

10.4.17. The accountant in charge of the inventory shall prepare a document for receiving inventory materials or requesting the disbursement of materials to settle the difference resulting from the increase or deficit, and each of the accountant in charge of the inventory, the direct head or the competent manager shall sign either.

2. 11.Fixed Assets



General description of the section		
The coverage	This section covers general policies and provisions related to the control of government fixed assets, including the lands and real estates of government.	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**The Directorate**	**The responsibilities**
	Financial Systems Development Directorate	- Supervising the process of recording and updating the fixed assets register within the general ledger system, and managing the insurance process of these assets, and following up to

		obtain the compensations for any losses covered by the unified insurance documents.
	Government Property Affairs Directorate	- Supervising and controlling of the lands and real estates owned by government.

11.1. Fixed asset control provided

Introduction

11.1.1. This section contains accounting provisions, policies and control procedures relating to the preservation and registration of government fixed assets.

11.1.2. The accounting policies specified in this system do not apply to renewable and non-renewable natural resources.

11.1.3. The criteria and conditions for the registration of fixed assets contained in this system apply to fixed assets registered after the date of its issuance, and no modification of the registered asset data prior to that date.

11.1.4. For the purposes of applying the provisions of this section, the following terms mean the meanings described in their respective spouses, unless the context of the text is otherwise stated:

- **Fixed assets:** assets owned by the government entity or are considered owned by them, and the purpose of their ownership is to use them for administrative

use or in the production or processing of goods or services, or to rent them to third parties, and their consumer life extends for more than one financial year, and the other conditions that qualify them to be recognized as fixed assets as in this section.

- **Fixed archaeological assets:** ancient assets of historical, environmental or cultural importance, such as historical buildings, archaeological sites and nature reserves.
- **Land development:** permanent improvement, repair and development costs on lands with excluding to the buildings.
- **Fair value of the asset:** The market value of the asset is assessed by professionals specialized in the valuation of the relevant assets.
- **Estimated asset value:** A similar asset value in properties and specifications, a value for replacing the consumer asset, or a re-production or creation value of a similar alternative asset.
- **Financial lease:** A lease that entails transferring the risks and benefits associated with the ownership of the tenant's asset substantially to the government entity during the lease period.
- **Fixed assets system:** The central electronic system adopted by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy in the registration of government fixed assets.
- **The procurement system:** the central electronic system adopted by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy in the conduct and registration of purchases.
- **Fixed asset registration:** Registration or entry of fixed asset data into the fixed asset system.
- **Consumer age:** the duration of time during which the asset is usable.

Register fixed assets

11.1.5. Government entities must register fixed assets that meet the financial conditions, standards and ceilings specified in this system.

11.1.6. Fixed assets are must be recorded in the government entity's fixed assets register when they are acquired in any of the following ways:

A. purchase.

B. Permanently allocated to the government entity by the government.

C. Transferred to the government entity by another government entity.

D. Obtain it as a donation or a grant from private individuals or entities.

E. The asset is manufactured or created by the government entity.

F. Rent it through a financing lease.

11.1.7. Fixed assets acquired by purchase, manufacturing or construction are recorded at cost in addition to other expenses to put the asset into operation, and if they cannot be registered at the purchase cost, they are recorded at estimated value.

11.1.8. The fixed assets received as a donation, grant or gift are recorded at their estimated value.

11.1.9. The costs of the warranty extension contract are added to the value of the fixed asset if the extension contract is purchased in the fiscal year in which the asset was purchased and the depreciation of the contract is calculated over the consumer life of the fixed asset.

11.1.10. Since it is often not possible to determine the financial value of the archaeological fixed assets, it is therefore assessed and registered in the register of fixed assets according to the appropriate basis set by the government entity, after coordination with the Financial Systems Development Directorate.

11.1.11. Fixed assets associated with the completed stages of the project are recorded when they are ready for use, otherwise they will be recorded after all stages of the project are completed.

11.1.12. The government entity must add subsequent expenses for the improvement or maintenance of fixed assets to the assets value in the book if those expenses will increase the consumer life, increase the future production capacity of the asset, substantially improve the quality of the products or reduce operating costs, from before these expenses are incurred.

11.1.13. The fixed asset system is used within the central financial system adopted by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy to register and control fixed assets, and any other system may only be used with the approval of the Financial Systems Development Directorate.

11.1.14. Within a transition period of not more than one year from the date of their connection to the fixed asset system, government entities must complete the

procedures for accounting, evaluating and entering fixed asset data that were acquired prior to the government entities connection to the system.

The financial ceiling for the registration of fixed assets

11.1.15. Fixed assets must be recorded if their value is equal to or exceed the financial ceilings specified in the following table:

category	Ceiling(BD)
Land and land development	Undefined
Buildings, development of buildings and other construction, infrastructure, leased assets through a financial lease	10,000
Vehicles, ships and boats	3,000
Furniture	500
Tools, machinery, hardware, IT assets	100

11.1.16. Government authorities are allowed to record fixed assets whose value are less than the financial ceilings specified in the fixed assets register, and in this case they may record the full depreciation at the time of recording or according to the useful life.

11.1.17. The cost and return calculation must be taken into account when deciding to register fixed assets below the specified financial ceilings.

11.1.18. The government entity may treat a set of fixed assets as a single unit within the fixed asset register, if the following conditions are met:

A. They are identical or similar in their characteristics and functions or represent as a whole a coherent system

B. A combined value of 10,000 dinars or more.

C. The cost of its individual units should not exceed the financial ceiling.

D. To have all one productive life.

The classification of fixed assets

11.1.19. Fixed assets in the government entity's final account lists are classified into main categories, and subcategories according to the classification structure of the fixed asset system, taking into account that subcategories have the same nature or characteristics as the main category of fixed assets.

The procedure for registering fixed asset purchases

11.1.20. Purchases of fixed assets charged on the recurrent budget are recorded in accordance with the following procedures:

A. When preparing the purchase order, the officer in charge of registering fixed assets in the government entity enters the fixed asset purchase data contained in the purchase order system, under appropriate fixed asset slate supposition, under The Fourth Section of the Budget (Capital Goods Expenses).

B. After the purchase process is completed and receiving the purchase order and the invoice and passed by the government entity, the fixed asset purchase data appears in the 'Add Asset Group' report, which is automatically prepared by the central financial system.

C. The employee responsible for registering fixed assets will check the 'Add Asset Group' report on a daily basis and add any new assets that appear within the fixed asset system.

D. The employee responsible for registering fixed assets during the completion of the asset registration procedure may modify the specified classification of the asset to another.

E. In the event that the Payments and Collection Directorate delays in passing invoices or the supplier delays in submitting invoices for payment, the government entity can manually enter fixed asset purchase data into the fixed asset system, and then set up the daily entries necessary to update the general ledger system, in which case it should be taken into account that those assets will not be registered again when the invoices are being processed later.

11.1.21. The purchases of fixed assets whose cost is charged to the projects budget are recorded with the same mechanism used for recurrent expenditures, and then prepare the necessary journal entry to settle the addition of these assets in the fixed assets system to be calculated on the items of the projects assets additions in the general ledger.

Depreciation of fixed assets

11.1.22. The accounting depreciation of fixed assets recorded in the fixed asset system must be calculated in accordance with the following accounting policies:

A. The straight-line depreciation method is used in calculating the accounting depreciation of fixed assets, and the method of calculating depreciation may be adjusted after coordination with the Financial Systems Development Directorate.

B. Depreciation calculation begins when the asset is ready to be utilized and continues until the end of its specified consumer life.

C. Accounting depreciation is not calculated for: land, land development, archaeological assets, and works of art.

D. The book value of the fixed asset will remain at (one BD) in the fixed asset register, if the asset remains in use after its total value is depreciated.

11.1.23. The consumer life of IT assets is set at 5 years, and the approval of the Information and Communication Technology Governance ICT Committee must be obtained to determine a consumption life below that period.

11.1.24. Taking into account the provision set out in paragraph (11.1.23) the government entity determines the consumer age of fixed assets it owns on the basis of the parent manufacturer's guidelines, or the recommendations of a specialized technical authority, and can be guided by the consumer ages described in the following table:

Depreciation Ratio (in years)	Category
25	Buildings, building development and other construction
40	Infrastructure
5	Vehicles, tools, machinery, hardware, IT
10	Furniture assets, ships and boats

Internal control procedures

11.1.25. The government entity is responsible for establishing appropriate control measures for the preservation and protection of the fixed assets in its jurisdiction, taking into account their compatibility with the purposes, types, size and nature of the uses of fixed assets, and the cost of control procedures is proportional to the value of the benefits.

11.1.26. The internal control system developed by the government entity to control their fixed assets must ensure the following:

A. Managing and using fixed assets efficiently and best exploited.

B. Keeping legal documents proving the government entity's ownership of fixed assets, as required by the legislation issued.

C. Protecting fixed assets from loss, theft, misuse, or use by unauthorized persons.

D. Maintaining and preserving fixed assets and keep them intact and in a good condition.

E. Insurance for fixed assets against potential risks in accordance with the provisions and procedures described in the subsection "Insurance of Government Assets" no. (11.2).

F. The segregation of the responsibilities of the functions of purchasing, receiving, recording and inventory of fixed asset data, wherever possible under the functional organization of the government entity.

G. The database of the fixed asset register should be kept completed and updated.

H. Inventory of fixed assets annually.

11.1.27. The government entity determines the appropriate procedure for numbering its fixed assets, depending on the nature of each of these assets, so that it is possible to track and control those assets for inventory purposes, identify cases of loss or theft, and facilitate follow-up maintenance and insurance procedures.

11.1.28. The employee responsible for preserving and updating fixed asset data must be provided with fixed asset data as soon as it is received and accepted, in order to complete the procedures for updating the fixed asset system and to place the identification number of the asset received according to the procedure specified by the government entity.

Inventory of fixed assets

11.1.29. Fixed assets must be inventoried at least once per year, and inventory may be conducted at different periodic times during the year for each set of fixed assets, provided that all fixed assets are inventoried at least once per year.

11.1.30. The inventory is carried out by a committee or specialists who are not directly related to the responsibility of preserving, registering or controlling assets.

11.1.31. Reports from the fixed asset system are used as a basis for matching inventory data, and fixed assets are inspected in their locations to verify and validate the data mentioned in the registry compared to the actual inventory results.

11.1.32. The employee responsible for overseeing the inventory should prepare a report containing data on the start and completion date of the inventory and the scope and results of the inventory, as well as a statement of:

A. unused or unusable fixed assets, with a view to taking action to repair or exclude them.

B. The difference between the results of the actual inventory and the data of the fixed asset registry, in order to investigate the causes of the differences, and to take the specific actions in this system on lost fixed assets.

11.1.33. The inventory report and inventories are used as a basis for modifying and correcting fixed asset registry data, and the report is approved by a functional level of at least a manager in the government entity.

Excluding fixed assets

11.1.34. Fixed assets may not be excluded before the end of their consumer life, unless there are economic or technical justifications determined by a specialist or specialized entity.

11.1.35. Excluded fixed assets are disposed of in any of the following means:

A. Retain them for educational or training purposes.

B. Transfer it to another government entity to take advantage of it.

C. Sale by auction in accordance with the provisions of Decree No. (36) of 2002 on the organization of tenders, auctions, purchases, government sales and its amendments and executive regulations, and the decisions and circulars of the Tender Board issued in this regard.

D. Granting it to charity officially registered in the Kingdom of Bahrain, upon its written request, provided that it is not limited to one charity whenever possible.

E. Granting personal computers and accessories to employees of the government entity concerned whose career levels are below of a manager or in his judgment, to be done in accordance with regulations that ensure the fairness of distribution and protect the stored data (e.g. distribution by lot).

F. Dispose of them by the methods that the competent committee deems appropriate in the case that there is an economic feasibility to dispose of them other than the methods mentioned above.

11.1.36. The disposal of government land is subject to Decree No. (19) of 2002 on the disposal of privately owned land, and the government land and real estate section of this manual.

11.1.37. The form "Request for Fixed Assets Disposal" no. (1902) is used to exclude fixed assets, promotes exclusion by opinion or technical report from a competent authority, and the government entity may use another form provided that it contains a minimum of the data specified in the form in question.

11.1.38. The committee referred to in clause no. (5.1.5) or another competent committee to be formed with the same conditions of this committee is taking responsibility for establishing the necessary controls for the exclusion of fixed assets, including the conditions for agreeing to exclude assets and determining how they are disposed of, in a manner that does not conflict with the provisions of this manual.

11.1.39. The form "Request for Fixed Assets Disposal" no. (1902) is sent after its approval to the employee responsible for preserving and updating fixed asset data, in order to update the fixed asset registry data with excluded fixed asset data.

11.1.40. The Directorate of Fixed Assets Supervision in the Government entity should maintain the 'Request for the forms "Request for Fixed Assets Disposal" no. (1902) and the supporting documents in a file dedicated to this purpose.

11.1.41. The procedure for the asset excluded must be initiated immediately upon the issuance of the decision, and if it is reused it must be re-registered in the system.

Loss or theft of fixed assets

11.1.42. As soon as the government entity discovers the loss of any of the fixed assets in their custody, they must investigate the causes of the loss and take the necessary measures to recover the lost asset.

11.1.43. The procedures provided for in the "Financial Offences and crimes" no. (12.2) subsection of this manual shall be applied when a serious suspicion of a financial irregularity or offence relating to the disposal of fixed assets is discovered.

11.1.44. If lost or stolen assets are not recovered, they are excluded in accordance with the procedures specified in this section.

Government vehicles

Government agencies responsibilities

11.1.45. The competent directorates of supervision of government vehicles in the government entity undertakes the following responsibilities to control government vehicles, in line with the provisions and procedures specified in this system:

A. Establishing the appropriate internal control system to manage the efficient and effective use of government vehicles.

B. Conduct a periodic review of the government's vehicle needs and take action to reduce the cost of renting vehicles and keep the minimum number of vehicles.

C. Identify appropriate controls and procedures to ensure the safety of the use and maintenance of government vehicles by their users.

D. Monitoring the compliance of the leased institutions with the conditions of dealing specified in the lease contracts, in particular with regard to the obligation of the leased institution to provide the vehicles and follow up their maintenance and take responsibility for their insurance and registration and take responsibility for the damages resulting from the violation of the terms of the contract.

E. Keep a file for each vehicle rental contract, in which a copy of the contract is kept, reports of inspection and delivery of rented vehicles, and any correspondence with the contracted enterprise.

F. Keeping the required records and statements according to this system and updating their data first and foremost.

G. Maintaining and repairing government-owned vehicles, and keeping a record to follow up on their maintenance and repair, so that repair data and periodic maintenance dates are recorded.

H. Follow-up inspection procedures and renew the annual registration of government-owned vehicles.

I. Keep a record of the daily movement of vehicles.

J. Keeping a record of each government vehicle containing all documents related to the purchase, insurance and maintenance of the vehicle, works and repairs, etc.

11.1.46. The Director of the Directorate which Supervision of Government Vehicles in the Government entity has the authority to address the competent authorities in the Ministry of Interior about everything related to the registration, transfer or cancellation of government vehicles.

11.1.47. A poster bearing the logo and name of the government entity must be installed on vehicles owned by the government entity or rented for a long period of time, with a hotline number to be used by the public to report any improper use by the driver of the vehicle.

The driver of the government vehicle

11.1.48. The driver of the government vehicle must comply with the following responsibilities:

A. Carry a valid driver's license, valid for the type of government vehicle he drives.

B. Compliance with the laws and regulations issued to regulate traffic and vehicle traffic.

C. Take appropriate precautions and measures to maintain the safety of the government vehicle, and conduct the necessary daily or periodic inspections of the vehicle, such as checking the levels of oil, cooling water and tires and any other examination that does not require specialized technical expertise.

D. Notify the administration or the competent department of the government entity in the event of an accident, malfunction or damage to the vehicle.

E. Handing over the vehicle to the competent administrative authority of the government entity on the periodic dates set for cleaning, maintenance, inspection and registration.

F. The use of government vehicles for purposes authorized by the government entity only, and may not be used for personal matters or other purposes that are not related to official business functions.

G. Unless the nature of the work is called for the maintenance of the government vehicle for emergencies, the driver of the government vehicle must park the vehicle in the places specified by the relevant government entity after the official working hours, and hand over the vehicle keys to the relevant department.

11.1.49. If the driver of the government vehicle causes a traffic accident and is the wrong party according to the traffic report, he bears a maximum of 50 BD from the cost of repair or from the endurance amount specified in the government vehicle insurance policy, in addition to the cost of issuing a traffic report, and the refund after deducting or paying in cash by the employee is supplied to the consolidated public account.

11.1.50. The driver shall bear all the costs of unsecured damage or failures caused by the vehicle if it causes it as a result of misuse, negligence or intentional damage to the vehicle, as well as the penalties imposed by civil service regulations.

11.1.51. The driver of the government vehicle shall bear the value of all traffic violations imposed on him while driving the government vehicle, and in this regard the government entity must follow the following:

A. Follow-up with the competent directorate of the Ministry of Interior periodically to verify the violations recorded on the vehicles owned by it.

B. Notify the user of the vehicle directly concerned, for the violations you receive from the competent directorate of the Ministry of Interior or from the leased company.

C. Deducting the amount of the violation from the employee's salary and paying it to the competent directorate of the Ministry of Interior in case the employee procrastinates or fails to pay the violation.

D. Ensure that any traffic violations payable to the driver of the government vehicle are settled before the end-of-service dues are paid to him.

The exclusion of government vehicles

11.1.52. The disposal of government vehicles is subject to the provisions and procedures specified in this section.

11.1.53. The government agency will take the necessary measures to cancel or transfer ownership of the excluded government vehicle in coordination with the competent directorate of the Ministry of Interior.

11.1.54. Excluded vehicles granted to third parties are not delivered until the transfer procedures have been completed with the competent directorate of the Ministry of Interior by the government entity.

11.1.55. The government entity updates the fixed asset registry with excluded government vehicle data, and notifies the Financial Systems Development Directorate with data on vehicles that are cancelled or converted, in order to update the data on the insurance records of government vehicles.

11.2. Government Asset Insurance Provided

Introduction

11.2.1. This section contains provisions, procedures and responsibilities related to asset insurance and government responsibilities.

11.2.2. The following definitions are used to indicate some of the terms in this system:

• **Insurance**: A contract between the insurance company and the insured, in which the first party undertakes to compensate the second party for damages and losses covered by a contract or insurance policy, in exchange for the payment of the premium by the second party.

• **Insurance policy:** is the bond or legal evidence that proves the existence of the insurance contract, and includes the limits of the insurance coverage and its terms and exceptions, and the endorsement, reports and subscription information that is provided to the insurance company and the written correspondence exchanged between the parties of the contract is an integral part of the insurance contract.

• **Endorsement**: A document issued by the insurance company, which acknowledges the renewal of the policy, specifying the values of the insured assets

and the period of validity of the policy, or referring to the modifications to the policy during its validity.

The subject of insurance: the assets, persons or liabilities insured against the risks associated with them.

• **Endurance amount**: Is the amount or percentage specified by the policy, which is borne by the insured at the time of the loss, and the insurance company's responsibility is limited to compensating the value of the loss that exceeds this amount or the percentage specified in the policy.

• **Requirement of proportionality**: a condition that compensates the insured for part of the total loss, as a result of securing the assets at a value less than their replacement value after an accident.

• **Replacement value**: The cost of replacing the damaged property with new ones after deducting the endurance amount, without taking into account the consumption.

• **Civil liability insurance**: Insurance coverage of claims of public civil liability to third parties, in order to meet financial damages resulting from the operation or use of assets insured by government facilities.

• **Field risk inspection:** Field visit to examine and inspection the subject of insurance in order to assess the risks associated with it, or to assess losses in the case of a claim for compensation.

• **Claim**: Is to claim the insurance company for loss or damage to the subject of the insurance, as a result of a risk covered by the policy.

• **Clearance Notice**: A written statement from the insured that the insurance company's party will be discharged from the current and future liability for the incident in question, after agreeing to the amount of compensation due in accordance with the limits of the insurance coverage specified in the policy.

• **Law**: Decree No. (36) of 2002, on the organization of tenders, auctions, purchases, government sales, amendments and executive regulations.

General provisions

11.2.3. A special budget is allocated, supervised by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy within the recurrent expenditure budget to cover the costs of purchasing and providing the central insurance covers.

11.2.4. The Financial Systems Development Directorate is responsible for contracting insurance companies to provide the appropriate central insurance coverage to cover the topics specified in this section.

11.2.5. Central insurance policies cover the risks of the assets and obligations of government entities whose budget is linked to the central financial system, and may not contract directly with insurance companies to provide insurance covers on the risks covered by the central insurance covers specified in this section.

11.2.6. Independent government entities may contract directly with insurance cover providers to obtain the insurance covers they need, or coordinating with the Financial Systems Development Directorate to benefit from the central insurance covers, provided that its budget bears the cost involved.

11.2.7. Insurance for assets is limited to what is within the ownership of the government entity only, and the assets leased or used by the government entity may be insured if the entity is responsible for compensation in the event that the tenant or user asset is damaged as agreed in the lease or employment contract.

11.2.8. Insurance applications covering any benefit of employees of government entities are subject to approval by the Civil Service Bureau in accordance with their regulations and laws.

11.2.9. When transferring ownership of a secured asset, the government entity must notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate to remove that asset from the central insurance cover as of the date of transfer or transfer.

11.2.10 Central insurance policies supervised by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy cover the following documents:

A. Stores and their contents.

B. Plants and operating plants.

C. Cash money and financial custody.

D. Transportation such as government vehicles, ships and boats.

E. Civil liability to others.

F. Personal injuries for technical and vocational education and training students at the Ministry of Education.

G. Government buildings and facilities and their contents.

11.2.11. Insurance applications are subject to a feasibility study, and therefore government assets and liabilities are not insured if the cost or conditions of their insurance exceed the financial benefit expected from the insurance.

11.2.12. The procedures for the purchase and renewal of insurance covers are subject to the provisions and procedures stipulated by law and the decisions and circulars of the Tenders Board.

11.2.13. The total values of the insurance issue are determined by the government entity concerned in coordination with the Financial Systems Development Directorate before purchasing the insurance covers for the first time, and are revalued by the government entity where necessary.

11.2.14. Government entities are responsible for repairing damages to uninsured government assets and property, and are responsible for compensating third parties for damages arising from their uninsured responsibilities.

Government agencies responsibilities

11.2.15. Government entities follow up on the procedures related to the insurance of assets and responsibilities that concern them by carrying out the following tasks and responsibilities:

A. Take all precautionary measures to avoid accidents and protect government assets, and protect users or beneficiaries from losses or damages associated with their use or operation.

B. Implementing the recommendations of inspection reports related to the development of risk management directorate procedures and providing the Financial Systems Development Directorate with these updates.

C. Providing data on time when requested by the Financial Systems Development Directorate, the insurance company, field inspection companies or other stakeholders.

D. Providing the Financial Systems Development Directorate with its observations on technical reports related to the insurance process, at the request of that directorate.

E. Keep a detailed record of the insured assets data, update its data first and foremost and notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate of changes in the values of those assets, and the new assets that are acquired.

F. Keep a copy of the insurance policies and all relevant documents.

G. Follow-up and monitor changes in the prices of insured assets during the period of insurance effect as a result of inflation and price changes, and provide the management of the Financial Systems Development Directorate with them, to modify the insurance policies in order to avoid applying the requirement of proportionality under which the government is compensated with values below the replacement value or the cost of repair.

H. Reimbursement of the costs of repairing damages or losses and the amount of endurance stipulated in the insurance policy from the amounts approved in its budget, and the completion of the related procedures.

I. Make field inspections available and provide the required data to the relevant authorities in accordance with the requirements of insurance, claim or compensation procedures.

J. Knowledge of the terms and obligations and limits of compensation and exceptions, the limits of tolerance stipulated in the insurance policies, and contact with the Financial Systems Development Directorate to clarify any inquiries related to this.

K. Notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate during the period of validity of the policy of additions to the sites or insured assets, in order to be included in the policy.

L. Notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate during the period of the policy, regarding the cancellation of certain assets such as demolitions and the exclusion of machinery, equipment, contents, ships and boats in order to delete them from the policy.

M. Follow-up to the implementation of the recommendations of the inspection reports, and to inform the Financial Systems Development Directorate of the actions taken, so that the Directorate will notify the insured company of the modifications that may occur to the subject of insurance.

N. Review asset valuation, underwriting and risk management reports, the limits of compensation for losses included in insurance policies, and provide the Financial Systems Development Directorate with any feedback.

Applying for insurance

11.2.16. To add any insurance topic sought by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, the government entity submits the insurance application according to the following procedures:

A. The government entity directs the insurance application to the Financial Systems Development Directorate, with all data on the subject of insurance.

B. The government entity must provide the Financial Systems Development Directorate with any additional data it requests in order to make the appropriate decision on the application.

C. If the application is rejected, the government entity will be addressed with the reasons for the rejection in writing with the recommendations it deems necessary.

D. When approving the insurance application, the Financial Systems Development Directorate coordinates with the insurance company to conduct a field inspection of the insurance issue - if necessary, depending on the nature of the insurance subject matter - to identify the relevant risk situation, prepare the necessary inspection reports, and may assign a specialized company to accomplish that task.

E. The Financial Systems Development Directorate sends inspection and evaluation reports after review to the government entity, to express an opinion on the observations and recommendations contained, with the final reports to be issued after the completion of the procedures for their review and modification in accordance with the government entity's visuals.

F. If there is a valid standard insurance policy commensurate with the nature of the subject of the insurance required, the Financial Systems Development Directorate will notify the insurance company to include it in the insurance policy, in accordance with the rates of prices included in the policy, and provide the government entity with a copy of the insurance policy and the supporting documents.

G. In the absence of a valid standard insurance policy commensurate with the nature of the subject matter of the insurance required, the Financial Systems Development

Directorate will consider the feasibility of purchasing an insurance policy for this cover or notifying the government entity to provide insurance cover directly by contracting with one of the service providers.

H. The Financial Systems Development Directorate maintains the original copy of the insurance policy and related documents, and provides a copy of it to the government entity, with a view to accessing it and providing any notes on it, if any, and keeping it in its records.

Renewal of insurance

11.2.17. The annual renewal of insurance policies concluded for more than one year is carried out in accordance with the following procedures:

A. Long before the expiry of the policy, the Financial Systems Development Directorate prepares for the renewal process, by coordinating with the relevant government entities to provide the necessary data for the renewal of the policy, in particular by:

1. Identify any changes required to the subject of insurance such as deletion, addition or reassessment.

2. Ensure that there are no claims due to government entities that have not been reported or have not been completed.

B. The Financial Systems Development Directorate sends the policy renewal request to the insurance company, including the request for any required changes to the insurance subject matter.

C. The insured company prepares the renewal document (endorsement) and sends it to the Financial Systems Development Directorate.

D. The Financial Systems Development Directorate reviews the endorsement to ensure that the price and the capacity of the insurance coverage fit with the original contract with the insurance company.

E. The Financial Systems Development Directorate sends documents supporting the renewal process to the relevant government entity and it should be notified of any relevant observations.

Amendment of the insurance contract

11.2.18. The Financial Systems Development Directorate may modify the contract within the limits contained in it, and in a manner that does not conflict with the law.

11.2.19. The government entity is required to notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate during the validity of the insurance contract, any changes in the subject of insurance, including deletion, addition, change in values, etc., in order to take the necessary measures to coordinate with the insurer to modify the policy.

Vehicle Insurance

11.2.20. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy provides insurance coverage for vehicles owned by government entities, through a unified insurance policy issued by a local insurance company.

11.2.21. The Financial Systems Development Directorate maintains a record of the data of government insured vehicles that will be modified in accordance with the deletion and addition notices addressed to them by government entities.

11.2.22. Government vehicles are insured in accordance with the following procedures:

A. When acquiring the vehicle, the government entity directs a request to the Financial Systems Development Directorate, with a view to arranging the insurance cover, provided that the application contains data specifying the type and specifications of the vehicle.

B. The Financial Systems Development Directorate will notify the insurance company to include the vehicle to be insured to the central insurance policy, and to secure it in accordance with the rates of the prices listed in the insurance policy, and to notify the government entity to receive the necessary insurance certificate from the insurance company.

11.2.23. Government vehicle insurance are renewed in accordance with the following procedures:

A. Long before the expiry of the policy, the Financial Systems Development Directorate sends a circular to government entities to report on any additions or omissions of their vehicles, and to ensure that there are no claims due to government entities that have not been reported or have not completed their termination procedures.

B. The Financial Systems Development Directorate updates the general registry of government vehicles based on the statements of government entities, and sends the request for renewal of the insurance policy to the insurance company with the updated list of vehicles.

C. The Financial Systems Development Directorate receives insurance certificates and notifies government entities to receive, review, verify and retain their data.

11.2.24. The government entity should notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate in writing of the deletions made on its vehicles, in order to cancel their insurance and recover the outstanding premium for the remaining period.

Compensation

Claim for compensation

11.2.25. The government entity must notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate in writing immediately after losses or damages to insured assets requiring financial compensation, and to comply with the relevant circumstances, bearing in mind that delays in reporting the claim may result in the rejection of compensation by the insurance company.

11.2.26. It is not required to refer to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy for accidents of insured government vehicles, and the government entity concerned shall conclude the compensation procedures directly with the insurance company, unless the insured company objects to compensation, in which case the Financial Systems Development Directorate shall be notified to verify the coverage conditions stipulated in the insurance policy.

11.2.27. The insured government entity is not entitled to claim additional improvements beyond the value specified in the policy, and is liable to pay for the repair and replacement of its uninsured assets affected by its approved budget.

11.2.28. The amount of compensation is estimated in accordance with the terms of the policy and the insurance contract with the insurer.

11.2.29. The government entity may initiate purchase and contracting procedures to repair damages resulting from the accident, in accordance with the legislation governing procurement, and after coordination with the Financial Systems Development Directorate and obtaining the approval of the insurance company or the resident of losses caused by the insured company.

11.2.30. The government entity must take all necessary measures and measures to minimize losses and damages as much as possible.

11.2.31. The compensation returns due to the government are provided to the consolidated public account, and the government entity is responsible for paying for the repair and replacement of its insured assets affected by its approved budget.

11.2.32. When the insured assets are damaged or lost, the government entity is required to cooperate with the insured company and provide the supporting documents, with the aim of assisting in the recovery of the damage sought by the party causing the damage or losses.

11.2.33. The government entity shall require those who cause damages or losses to uninsured government property to pay financial compensation to return the damaged facility to its previous state prior to the accident, and to take legal action against it if necessary, in accordance with applicable laws and regulations.

11.2.34. Financial claims must not be paid to beneficiaries until they have signed a final clearance authorizing the government entity to release any future liability or claim after receiving the agreed amount of compensation.

11.2.35. The government entity should analyse and examine the causes of claims, and take appropriate measures to improve its risk management procedures at its facilities, in order to avoid future losses.

11.2.36. Government entities are obliged to notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate of all their actions regarding the claim for damages, and copies of their correspondence with the relevant parties.

11.2.37. Compensation is made for claims for insurance policies purchased by the Government to cover personal injuries for technical, vocational and training students, based on medical reports specifying the type of injury and disability.

11.2.38. In the event of a dispute between the affected party and the government entity or the insurance company, whether regarding the declaration of liability or determining the amount of compensation due to the affected party, and the affected party resorting to the judiciary, the government entity must consult the Legislation and Legal Opinion Commission Bahrain on the necessary legal procedures.

Compensation procedures

11.2.39. Compensation procedures are carried out in the case of damages and losses, in accordance with the following procedures:

A. The Financial Systems Development Directorate shall be informed by the government entity in writing of losses or damages requiring financial compensation, and the circumstances associated with the accident, immediately after the loss or damages have occurred.

B. The Financial Systems Development Directorate reviews the notice of the government entity, verifying that the government entity is eligible for financial compensation under the policy.

C. If the government entity is entitled to compensation, the Financial Systems Development Directorate will notify the insurance company of damages or losses to the insured assets.

D. The Financial Systems Development Directorate coordinates with the government entity and the insurance company to inspect the incident to determine the causes of the losses and damages resulting from it.

E. The government entity in coordination with the insurance company prepares technical specifications and determines the amount of work required for repair or replacement.

F. The government entity shall take the necessary measures to obtain the offers of the suppliers to replace or repair the damaged assets, in accordance with the procurement procedures specified by law and in accordance with the conditions specified in the insurance policy, with the aim of obtaining an impartial assessment of the damages.

G. The government entity provides the Financial Systems Development Directorate with all documents relating to the estimated value of compensation.

H. The Financial Systems Development Directorate will require the insurance company to receive compensation, based on reports received from the government entity.

I. When the value of the compensation is approved, the clearance notice shall be signed by the parties concerned as required by the nature of the claim.

J. The proceeds of claims due to the government are reported to the consolidated public account, and the government entity completes the contracting procedures to repair the damages.

Provisions for damages relating to civil liability insurance

11.2.40. When a person or entity makes a financial claim for damages or losses as a result of the operation or use of government assets and assets, the government entity must take into account the following:

A. The claim is received only by an authorized employee who has the authority to receive the claims.

B. Never to acknowledge liability or accept payment of compensation, except after it has been submitted to a legal counsel for consideration and verification of the government entity's responsibility for compensation.

C. Notify the Financial Systems Development Directorate of the claim, to examine the possibility of payment through the civil liability insurance policy, if any.

11.3. Land and government real estate

This section includes policies, procedures and general provisions for control, administration, supervision of government land and real estate, and all actions on government real estate (sale, purchase and lease of land), and the preservation of its own records and data maintenance and insurance.

It also defines the competences and responsibilities of some government entities in controlling land and government real estate intended for exploitation or investment for social, industrial, educational, sports, housing, agricultural, marine, livestock, service projects, infrastructure, or the construction of various public utilities.

Definition of terminology

11.3.1. For the purposes of applying the provisions of this section of the Manual, the following terms means the meanings described, unless the context states otherwise mean:

A. **State-owned land is privately** owned in accordance with Decree No. (19) of 2002:

- State-owned land and real estate under the law.
- State-owned land under real estate title documents.
- Land that no one owns under real estate titles or final court rulings, or any other documents proving ownership of them on any legal basis.

B. **State-owned land and real estate are public property**: in accordance with article (26) of the Civil Code issued by Decree No. (19) of 2001:

- Public funds are state-owned real estate and transfers or a public legal person and are already intended for public benefit or by law, decree or decision of the competent minister.
- These funds may not be disposed of, seized or possessed by statute of limitations.
- The allocation of public funds for public benefit expires or ends with the end of the purpose for which it was allocated or by law decree or decision of the competent minister.

C. Central Register of Government Property: An electronic register containing government property data linked to all relevant government entities, established on

the basis of the Decision of the Council of Ministers No. (16-2064) dated May 9, 2010, supervised by the Government Property Affairs Directorate.

The Central Register of Government Property

11.3.2. Each government entity will hand over the documents of assets for all registered government property inside and outside Bahrain, except for documents for military and security installations.

11.3.3. The Government Property Affairs Directorate is responsible for the preservation of the original property documents, with each government entity keeping a permanent file for each land or government property in which all drawings, engineering designs, maps, maintenance data and any other documents related to government land or property are kept, and provide electronic copies to the Government Property Affairs Directorate.

11.3.4. Government entities must provide the Government Property Affairs Directorate with copies of leases of land and government real estate as soon as they are concluded or are located, and annual reports of the value of the rents due for them, in order to register them in the central registry of government property.

11.3.5. The government entity should notify the Government Property Affairs Directorate of any update or change in the land and real estate data allocated to it, with the aim of updating the data of the central registry of government property .

11.3.6. The Construction Projects Directorate at the Ministry of Works, Municipalities Affairs and Urban Planning provides electronic copies of the drawings and documents for new buildings to the Governmental Property Affairs Directorate after the completion of their construction.

Disposal of government land and real estate

11.3.7. Government land or real estate may not be used for other purposes or activities then the one originally assigned to it, in accordance with Decree No. (19) of 2002 on the disposal of privately owned land.

11.3.8. Based on Royal Decree No. (35) of 2016 regarding the mechanism for applying Article 4 of Decree-Law No. (19) of 2002 regarding the disposal of state-owned lands as private ownership, state agencies and other public legal persons

may dispose of the lands allocated to them or change Using it for another public purpose, pursuant to a decision issued by the Prime Minister or his first deputy, based on the approval of the one or two public entities concerned with the land - as the case may be - and after consulting the Urban Planning and Development Authority (See Appendix No.1) .

11.3.9. Government entities may not determine the validity of the property for use except in coordination with the Government Property Affairs Directorate, as follows:

A. If the property's inability to use is due to technical reasons, such as building defects or obsolescence of the property, this is supported by a technical report from the Ministry of Works, Municipal Affairs and Urban Planning.

B. If the property is not suitable for use is due to the government entity's desire to develop the property in accordance with its current and future requirements, this should be supported by a feasibility study.

11.3.10. The receipt of the possession of land or real estate that is dispensed with by the government entity for any reason, in accordance with the following rules:

A. When applying the provisions of paragraph (11.3.8), the coordination between the entity wishing to reallocate the land/property and the beneficiary of it must be taken into account, after the issuance of the updated property document and its adoption in the central registry of government property, provided that the delivery and receipt of the property with buildings and facilities, if any, shall be supervised by the Government Property Affairs Directorate and in accordance with the form of delivery and receipt (See Appendix No.2).

B. If the concerned government entity wishes to exclude the land/property, the entity will coordinate with the Government Property Affairs Directorate to receive the land/property.

The sale of government land and real estate

11.3.11 The sale or disposal of government land or real estate is subject to the provisions of Decree No. (19) of 2002 on the disposal of privately owned land (See Appendix No.3).

11.3.12. Applications for sale or disposal of government land or real estate must be submitted to the Government Property Affairs Directorate, where it completes the necessary procedures to complete the conduct in accordance with Decree No. (19) of 2002 on the disposal of privately owned land. Government land and real estate are sold by auction, unless a royal order is issued otherwise.

11.3.13. The sale of government lands and real estate shall be by public auction, unless a royal order is issued otherwise.

11.3.14. The Government Property Affairs Directorate is responsible for overseeing the sale of government real estate, which is issued by royal order to approve its sale through auction.

11.3.15. A decision shall be issued by the Minister concerned to form the Government Real Estate Sales Committee and its system of work, with members of the ministry or outside the ministry being experienced and honest and the members should not be less than three.

Determining the estimated price of the sale

11.3.16. An estimated price for government land and real estate must be determined before being put up for auction, which is carried out by a specialized evaluation committee to be formed and operated by a decision of the minister concerned, and those who participated in the estimated price determination work may not participate in the membership of the sales committee for the properties themselves.

11.3.17. The estimated price committee referred to in this section should be guided by the prices of the previous sale, market conditions, market value of similar properties, and other elements or factors affecting the determination of the estimated sale price.

11.3.18. The decision of the estimated price committee referred to in this section to determine the estimated sale price must be approved by the minister concerned or who he chooses to delegates on his behalf.

11.3.19. Strict confidentiality must be taken into account with regard to the estimated price set for the sale of government land and real estate by auction, so that the documents contained in this evaluation are placed in an envelope that is sealed as soon as it is approved by the members of the estimated price Committee and kept with the Director of the Government Property Affairs Directorate, and is

handed over at the start of the bidding session to the chairman of the sales committee to open it in the presence of its members.

Preparing the tender documents

11.3.20. The government entity concerned coordinates with the Government Property Affairs Directorate to prepare the tender documents for the sale of land and government real estate, to include a statement of the specifications of the properties to be sold and the conditions of sale and methods of payment of the price and insurance.

11.3.21. The value of insurance related to the sale of government land and real estate and the ways in which it is paid and refunded shall be determined by a decision of the Minister of Finance and Economy.

11.3.22. The price of selling the tender documents for the sale of government land and real estate shall be determined by a decision of the Minister of Finance and National Economy, provided that the actual cost of it is not exceeded.

The auction announcement

11.3.23. The auction is announced for the sale of government land and real estate in a local daily newspaper a maximum of twice, and may be advertised in the media or website of the relevant government entity or through an electronic platform supervised by the concerned government entity.

11.3.24. The auction for the sale of government land and real estate must be announced at least fifteen days before the scheduled date of the auction session.

11.3.25. The announcement of the auction for the sale of government land and real estate must include a brief description of the properties advertised for sale, the deadline for the purchase of the bidding documents, the location and time of the bidding session, the conditions that must be provided by those who participate in the bid, the value of temporary insurance and, and if permitted the inspection times.

Terms of participation in the auction

11.3.26 The terms of participation in the auction may be restricted to the sale of government land and real estate to a specific category when required for the sake of public interest, without limiting the bid to persons themselves.

11.3.27. Members of the sales and valuation committees may not participate in auctions to sell government land and real estate or any of its stages, by submitting themselves or by an acquaintance - they and their relatives up to the second degree - to bid in the bids announced in accordance with this section of the manual.

Temporary insurance

11.3.28. The tender documents on the sale of government land and real estate must include that the bidder is obligated to pay temporary insurance, cash, certified cheque or a letter of guarantee from a locally accredited bank or insurance policy from a locally accredited insurance company, but in all cases not less than BD 1,000.

11.3.29. Temporary insurance paid by the bidder in the auction for the sale of government land and real estate is delivered to the chairman of the sales committee before entering the auction in exchange for a receipt.

11.3.30. The temporary insurance paid at the auction for the sale of government land and real estate is refunded to the bidder that has not been awarded, and the refund is at the end of the auction session in exchange for the withdrawal of the receipt after signing a declaration which benefits that the bidder has in fact received the temporary insurance that was provided by him earlier.

The terms of sale

11.3.31. The bidder whom the auction for the sale of government land and real estate was awarded by is obliged to pay the price at which the property was deposited during the bidding session and before its end.

11.3.32. If the bidder whom the auction of land and government real estate was awarded by fails to pay the price awarded to him - during the bidding session and before its end, the next bidder in the order may be imposed, provided that it pays the amounts due in the same session, with the confiscation of the temporary insurance of the default bidder.

Postponing the sale

11.3.33.The sale is postponed to the next session if the number of bidders in the bid for the sale of government land and real estate is less than three, in which case it is not permissible to open the envelope of the estimated price of sale, and the re-announcement will follow the same procedures, and it should be announced at least one week ahead of schedule, and the announcement of the bid from the beginning may include setting the date and place of the bidding and return sessions so that the time difference between them is not less than one week.

Cancellation of the auction

11.3.34. A reasoned decision of the minister concerned may cancel the bid for the sale of government land and real estate after it is announced - and before the bidding session - if the sale is dispensed permanently, or the public interest requires it, provided that the decision to cancel is published in the manner prescribed by law, in which case the price of the sale of the tender documents and temporary insurance must be refunded to the owners without asking them within seven working days following the decision to cancel.

11.3.35. The auction for the sale of government land and real estate shall be cancelled if tenders are not submitted, or the bids submitted do not reach the estimated price of the sale, or, if the auction was not paid by the first or the second bidder during the auction as stated in paragraph (11.3.32).

11.3.36. If the auction is cancelled in accordance with the case described in paragraph (11.3.35), these properties may be re-auctioned in the same prescribed procedures.

Awarding the auction

11.3.37 The auction, which is held for the sale of government land and real estate, is awarded to the highest bidder.

11.3.38. The bidder whom the auction held for the sale of government land and real estate was awarded by, is obliged to pay the outstanding amounts in

accordance with the terms of sale contained in the bidding documents at the bidding session and before its end.

11.3.39. All amounts collected from the proceeds of the sale of bid documents for the sale of government land and real estate, confiscated insurance and the price of the sale of government real estate are deposited in the consolidated public account as a revenue.

Leasing and utilizing government land and real estate

11.3.40. Leasing government land is subjected to the previsions of the law Decree No (36) of 2002 on organizing the tenders, auctions, purchases, and sales of the government states and its procedure's. Taking into account the mechanism for applying Article 4 of Decree No. (19) of 2002 on the disposal of privately owned land issued by Royal Order No. (35) of 2016, the relevant government entity must coordinate in advance with the Government Property Affairs Directorate.

11.3.41. Each concerned government entity is responsible for the follow-up of collection for use and rental rents of land and rental properties required in accordance with its contracts, and in order to take all measures deemed appropriate in this regard by taking into account the provisions and procedures stipulated in the subsection 'Revenue Collection' No. (4.3).

Insurance and conservation of government land and real estate

Government real estate insurance

11.3.42. All precautions and measures must be taken, and security and safety means must be provided to government facilities and real estate and the equipment and equipment it contains to protect it from damage and the risk of damage or destruction.

11.3.43. Government real estate is insured in accordance with the provisions and procedures specified in the subsection 'Fixed Asset Insurance' No. (11.2), with the Financial Systems Development Directorate and it must provide the Government Property Affairs Directorate with an updated annual list of insured government buildings and real estate.

11.3.44. In the event of any damage or destruction of uninsured government properties, the relevant government entity must notify the Government Property

Affairs Directorate immediately and take the necessary measures to determine the cause of the damage or death caused and the actions taken.

Removal of encroachment on government land and real estate

11.3.45. The government entity is responsible for controlling the land and government properties allocated to it in order to prevent others from infringing on them, whether by occupying them without a permit, using them without a right or using them without legal basis, in accordance with the Decision of the Council of Ministers No. (16-2064) of May 09, 2010.

11.3.46. In the case of infringement of real estate and government land allocated to it, the relevant government entity must take the necessary measures in coordination with the municipality concerned and the State Issues Authority of the Ministry of Justice, Islamic Affairs and Endowments, depending on the circumstances, to remove the infringement by friendly or legal means to ensure that the following is achieved:

A. Obliging the infringer to evacuate the land or property immediately.

B. Obliging the infringer if he has initiated any construction, demolition or other work to stop these works and return the land or property to the state it was in.

C. Returning the land or property to what it was at the expense of the infringed and without compensation.

D. Claim for damages resulting from trespassing on land or government property.

11.3.47. In the event that there is a dispute between two or more governmental entities over the ownership of one or more government land or real estate, its limits or the rights and powers imposed on it, the dispute shall be presented to the Legislation and Legal Opinion Commission after the approval of the Council of Ministers, and the decision of the Authority to decide the dispute is binding on all parties.

Maintenance and out-fit of government buildings

11.3.48 The concerned government entities must notify the Government Property Affairs Directorate before commencing any maintenance work on government buildings and after completing them.

11.3.49. Government entities must obtain prior approval from the Ministry of Works, Municipal Affairs and Urban Planning to conclude or renew contracts for

the maintenance of government buildings, 90 days prior to the date of the contract's validity or renewal.

11.3.50. All maintenance work on government buildings (regardless of type) must be carried out by contractors already accredited by the Ministry of Works, Municipal Affairs and Urban Planning.

11.3.51. All government entities must commit to carrying out all planned maintenance work in accordance with the approved maintenance plan when making budget estimates.

11.3.52. Government entities must provide the Government Property Affairs Directorate and a copy to the Financial System Development Directorate with detailed and updated data for the maintenance (planned and executed) of its State-owned buildings, at least semi-annually, according to the form described in the annexes 'Building Maintenance Details Model' or any additional data requested by the mentioned directorate, as follows:

A. The government entity overseeing the building provides data on maintenance directly carried out by the government entity.

B. The Building Maintenance Directorate in the Ministry of Works Municipal Affairs and Urban Planning provides data on all building maintenance work carried out or supervised by them.

Unplanned (emergency) maintenance work

11.3.53. Emergency maintenance works are spent from the budget allocated for this purpose, which amounts to 15% of the total maintenance budget of the government entity.

11.3.54. The Central Efficiency Directorate may approve the request for maintenance of government buildings as emergency expenses, if they fall under any of the following categories:

List of emergency and urgent maintenance work	
Civil workers	1. Cracks in the structural structure. 2. Cracks in the walls of buildings. 3. Damage to the stair cases and the wall of the corridors. 4. Damage to the stairs.

	5. Damage to the slopes of the disabled. 6. Damage to septic tank covers and sewer holes. 7. Leaks in water extensions and blockages of sewage lines. 8. Severe damage to floor tiles. 9. Other elements that pose a threat to health, safety and the environment.
Mechanical works	1. Leaks in water extensions. 2. Breakdowns in water pumps. 3. Damage to water tanks (cracks or leaks from the tank). 4.Interruption in the water source. 5. Floods in water tanks. 6. Breakdowns in ventilation systems. 7. Other elements that pose a threat to health, safety and the environment.
Electrical works	1.Power outages. 2. Failures in the protection switches from the current leak to the grounding wire. 3. Breakdowns in the main and sub power distribution panels. 4. High temperature and loosening of the bolts with the electricity distribution plate. 5. Malfunctions in suspended external light bulbs. 6.Break in the power sockets, lighting switches, air conditioners and water heaters which leads to the detection of live electrical wires. 7.Damage or cut in live electrical wiring. 8. Loss of lighting lamp covers. 9. Other elements that pose a threat to health, safety and the environment.

Security, safety, energy and the environment

11.3.55. Government entities must take into account the conditions relating to security, safety, environmental conservation and energy conservation issued by the competent government authorities, when equipping government offices or facilities, and these conditions are included in the tender documents and procurement contracts concluded with government office providers as much as possible, for example:

A. Standards and conditions for environmental conservation specified by the Supreme Environment Council.

B. Safety conditions issued by the Civil Defence Council.

C. Instructions of the Civil Service Bureau on the regulation of occupational safety and health in government entities.

D. Energy conservation conditions and regulations issued by the Electricity and Water Authority.

E. Building conditions issued by the Ministry of Works Municipal Affairs and Urban Planning.

The responsibilities of supervision of government land and real estate

11.3.56. The relevant government entity is responsible for the control, management and supervision of the land and government properties allocated to it in accordance with the decision of the Council of Ministers No. (16-2064) issued in its 2064 session held on May 09, 2010 on the responsibility of supervising government property.

The Government Property Affairs Directorate

11.3.57. The Government Property Affairs Directorate is responsible for the following competences and responsibilities for the supervision and supervision of government land and real estate:

A. Keeping the central registry of government property and updating its data.

B. Coordinating with government entities on the application of general provisions and procedures contained in this section of the manual.

C. Coordinating with the Planning and Urban Development Authority to meet the needs of government entities of land and government real estate to be used in the implementation of current or future projects.

D. Developing the investment of government land and real estate through the optimal utilization of it and achieving the best return.

E. Coordinating with government entities that supervise government land and allocated real estate, for exploitation or investment for social, industrial, educational, sports, housing, agricultural, marine or livestock, service projects, infrastructure or to establish various public facilities, and to determine the rental value of the government land and real estate offered for rental.

G. Contracting leases for land or properties managed by them and collecting the rents due, registering and depositing them into the consolidated public account as a government revenue.

The Ministry of Industry, Trade and Tourism - Industry Affairs

11.3.58. The Industrial Districts Directorate at the Ministry of Industry, Trade and Tourism takes over the following responsibilities and competences for control of industrial zones:

A. Control and supervision of the management of land and government real estate in the industrial zones of the Ministry dedicated to industrial development purposes in accordance with the provisions and general policies contained in this section of the Standard Financial Manual.

B. Coordinating with the competent government entities to identify and survey industrial areas.

C. Approval of the allocation and leasing of government land and real estate in industrial areas for industrial development purposes.

D. Approval of the allocation and leasing of government land and real estate in industrial areas for use for commercial activities of a special nature, such as the construction of warehouses.

E. Concluding and signing contracts for leasing land and government real estate in the industrial areas of the Ministry, and ensuring that tenants do not violate the conditions and regulations specified by the Ministry of Industry, Trade and Tourism regarding the use of industrial zones.

F. Monitoring the collection of government land rents in industrial areas, receiving them and depositing the rents received in to the government revenues account.

G. Keeping a register for tenants that includes land or rental property data, rental value and amounts received and due to each tenant.

H. Preparing periodic reports on government land and real estate data leased in industrial areas, the value of rentals received and due, and sending a copy of these reports to the Government Property Affairs Directorate.

The Ministry of Works, Municipal Affairs and Urban Planning

11.3.59. Municipal affairs are responsible for the following competences and responsibilities:

A. Control and supervision of the management of government land in the areas allocated to municipal affairs, in accordance with the general provisions contained in this section of the Standard Financial Manual.

B. Concluding and signing leases for government land allocated to municipal affairs.

C. Follow-up the process of receiving rental rents of government leased land, and making sure that they are registered and deposited in the bank in to the government revenues account in accordance with the procedures followed.

D. Keeping a register of tenants that includes the leased land data, the rental value and the amounts received and due to each tenant.

E. Provide the Government Property Affairs Directorate with a list of land and rental government property data, and the value of rentals received and due annually.

11.3.60. Livestock affairs shall assume the following terms and responsibilities:

A. Control and supervision of the management of government land in areas designated for livestock purposes, in accordance with the general provisions contained in this section of the Standard Financial Manual.

B. Concluding and signing contracts for the leasing of government land in livestock areas.

C. Follow-up the process of receiving rentals of government land leased in livestock areas, and ensuring that they are registered and deposited in the bank in to the government revenues account in accordance with the procedures followed.

D. Keeping a register of tenants that includes the leased land data, the rental value and the amounts received and due to each tenant.

E. Provide the Government Property Affairs Directorate with a list of land and rental government property data, and the value of rentals received and due annually.

11.3.61. The Department of Fisheries Affairs shall assume the following terms and responsibilities:

A. Control and supervision of the management of government land in areas designated for fisheries construction purposes, in accordance with the general provisions contained in this section of the Guide.

B. Conclusion and signing of leases for government land in fisheries areas.

C. Follow-up the process of receiving rentals of government land leased in fisheries areas, and ensuring that they are registered and deposited in the bank in to the government revenues account in accordance with the procedures followed.

D. Keeping a register for tenants that includes leased land data, rental value and amounts received and owed to each tenant.

E. Provide the Government Property Affairs Directorate with a list of land and rental government property data, and the value of rentals received and due annually.

11.3.62. The Department of Plant Wealth shall assume the following competences and responsibilities:

A. Control and supervision of the management of government land in areas designated for agricultural development purposes, in accordance with the general provisions contained in this section of the Standard Financial Manual.

B. Concluding and signing contracts for leasing government land in agricultural development areas.

C. Supervising the receipt of rental rents of government land leased in agricultural development areas, and ensuring that they are registered and deposited in the bank in to the government revenues account in accordance with the procedures followed.

D. Keeping a register of tenants that includes the leased land data, the rental value and the amounts received and due to each tenant.

E. Provide the Government Property Affairs Directorate with a list of land and rental government property data, and the value of rentals received and due annually.

The Planning and Urban Development Authority

11.3.63. The Planning and Urban Development Authority has the following competences and responsibilities for the supervision and supervision of government land and real estate:

A. To ensure that government property does not conflict with the strategic national plan.

B. Ensure that the status of government property does not conflict with the approved plan for the region and does not conflict with the approved classification of real estate use in the region.

C. Coordination with the Government Property Affairs Directorate on the cancellation of government property that cannot be exploited because it conflicts with infrastructure services or for planning reasons.

The Ministry of Housing

11.3.64. The Ministry of Housing assumes the following responsibilities and jurisdictions for control of land and government properties allocated to housing projects, by decree of Law No. (10) of 1976 on housing and its amendments:

A. Control and supervision of public land and real estate allocated to major housing projects in the government, including land and government real estate that are part of the activities of the Housing Bank, in coordination with the Government Property Affairs Directorate.

B. Concluding and signing contracts for the development of government land in cooperation with the private sector to provide housing services, after taking the approval of the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

Various provisions

Survey work on government land and real estate

11.3.65. The government entity concerned must submit survey requests to the Government Property Affairs Directorate in cases where a survey certificate is required.

11.3.66. If the government property is to be included in the strategic projects, the relevant government entity will coordinate with the Planning and Urban Development Authority to obtain the necessary approvals for the project, including the survey certificate for the property.

Purchase of land and real estate

11.3.67. The government entity may purchase land or private real estate for private use purposes both inside and outside the country, with the approval of the Prime Minister, and in accordance with the provisions of Decree No. (36) of 2002 on the organization of tenders, auctions, purchases, government sales and its executive regulations, and the relevant government entity must coordinate with the Government Property Affairs Directorate in this regard, to find out the availability of government lands or properties that can be allocated for the desired purpose.

Assessment of government land and real estate

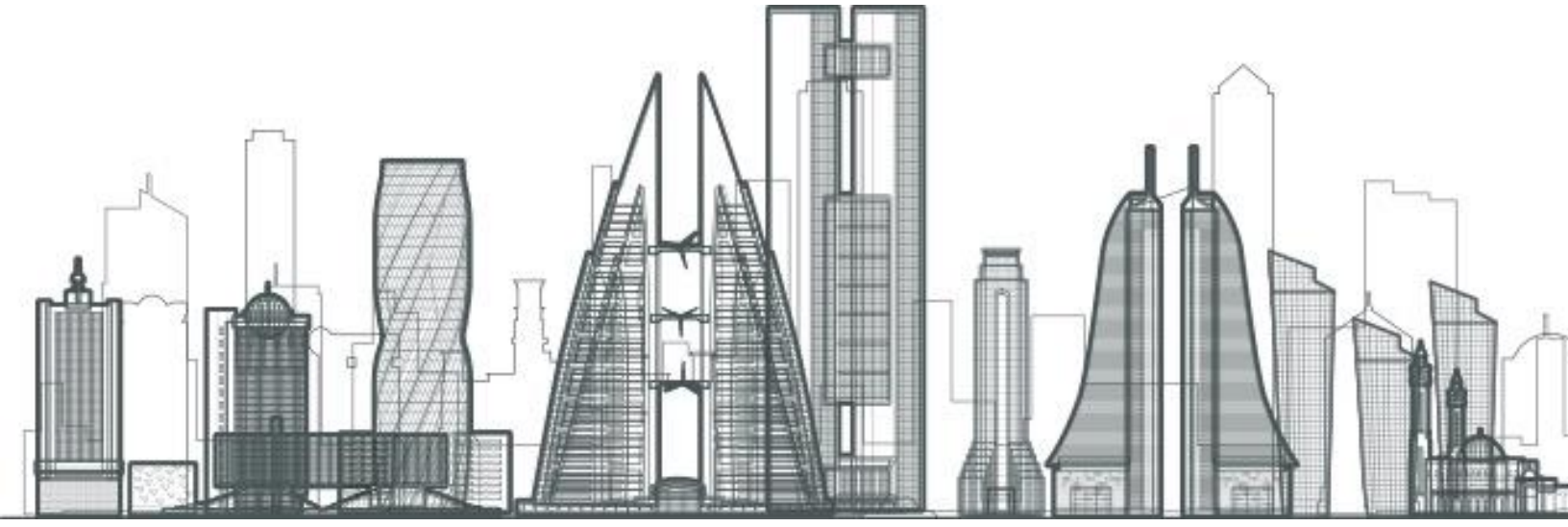
11.3.68. If the government entity wishes to evaluate the government land and real estate allocated to it, this is done through one of the real estate evaluators registered with the Real Estate Regulatory Authority.

11.4. Annexes

1 - Model Details of Building Maintenance

بيانات ا Information				عنوان المبنى Building Address					بيانات الملكية Ownership Information				سيانة
سنة البنا	تكلفة البناء	سنة آخر صيانة شاملة للمبنى	تكلفة الصيانة	رقم المبنى	رقم الطريق	رقم المجمع	الموقع	المحافظة	رقم الوثيقة	رقم المقدمة	رقم العقار	أسم المالك	سم خص
uilt ear	Built Cost	Last Maint. Year	Maint. Cost	Build. No.	Road No.	Block No.	Location	Govern.	Title Deed	Case No.	Parcel No.	Owner Name	Pers Nar

12. Reports and Follow Up



General Description of the Section		
Coverage	This section includes provisions and procedures relating to reviewing, auditing, irregularities and financial violations	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**Directorate**	**Responsibility**
	Office of Legal Affairs	Providing legal advice on the validity of procedures related to financial irregularities

12.2. Auditing

General Provisions

12.1.1. The Financial Resources Directorate in the government entity is responsible for coordinating with the directorate, department, unit or any other administrative

organization responsible for internal auditing, as approved by the competent authority, to assist in the external audit procedures.

12.1.2. All relevant directorates in the government entities must have the obligation to provide the required data to the auditors, to carry out internal audit works this shall include but it is not limited to the following:

A. Meet to provide an overview of your operations;

B. Discuss risks and internal controls

C. Explain specific processes and systems

D. Provide copies of internal documents;

E. Show supporting documentation related to different financial transactions; and

12.1.3. All Directorates must liaise with the auditors through the Audit and Communications Directorate in the Government Entity.

12.1.4. The involvement of the Finance Directorate in the audit must be from the beginning of audit process, to participate in the audit closing conference and the discussions that take place with auditors before the final report is issued.

12.1.5. It is the responsibility of each Director within a Government Entity to monitor corrective action in efforts to ensure that audit comments and recommendations are resolved on timely basis and in an appropriate manner. Specialized resources of the audit function may be used to provide special focus reviews or to expand the scope of planned review in areas where there may be a need for additional controls due to existing operating weaknesses.

12.1.6. Authorized auditors shall have at any time during the course of the audit, the right of access to the all books, registers and documents, and of requesting any details deemed necessary.

12.1.7. Auditors have unrestricted access to those within the Government Entity if the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence objectivity.

12.1.8. Concerns raised in the management letter and/or representation letter must be reviewed by the respective Directorate and provide comments on the same. An agreed-on action plan must be set and regularly followed up on

12.1.9. External Auditors must be appointed to audit the final accounts of Government Entities.

Audit File and Documentation

12.1.10. The Finance Directorate (or equivalent) must ensure that all financial reports are prepared on time for the audit review.

12.1.11. An audit file must be maintained and regularly updated by the Finance Directorate in Government Entities. The audit file must include at minimum the following documents:

1. Monthly closing statements;
2. Annual closing statement;
3. Fixed asset register;
4. List of authorized signatories and the date of authority;
5. Monthly trial balance;
6. Reconciliation statements for:
   a. Bank and cash accounts;
   b. Fixed assets;
   c. Payables accounts; and,
   d. Receivables accounts;
7. Ageing records for both receivables and payables;
8. Related party transactions and conflict of interest declarations;
9. Suspense accounts; and,
10. Last two-year audit report, representation and management letters, highlighting the progress of the Government Entity's Directorates against all the action points.

Procedures

12.1.12. Audit procedures on government accounts are carried out as follows:

A. The audit cycle begins when the National Audit Office sends the final account to external auditors.

B. Each government entity prepares a file for audit and submits it to the auditors at the start of the audit cycle.

C. After auditing, the Finance Director receives audited statements for review and, if necessary, notes are made on the adjustments that must be made that arise from the audit.

D. The letter of representation and management, prepared by the auditor, is sent to the relevant directorate for review and comment.

E. Approval is obtained to make the necessary adjustments to the final accounts. Any required adjustments are made after checking the accounts in the system (including passing adjustment journal entries in the GENERAL LEDGER and modifying individual and consolidated accounts).

F. At the end of all the adjustments, the Finance Director receives the following from the auditors:

1. The audited final account of the government entity.

2. A Draft of the auditor's report.

3.A Draft of the Directorate letter.

G. The Finance Director reviews the financial statements and ensures that all financial statements are presented appropriately and consistently with previous years, and are in line with the accounting policies in place and have been independently reviewed.

H. The government entity’s final accounts are sent to the Ministry of Finance and National Economy within 3 months of the end of the fiscal year.

12.2. Financial irregularities and violations

Introduction

12.2.1. This section aims to develop a procedural manual for government entities to deal with financial irregularities and crimes, in accordance with the provisions of the applicable legislation, and to establish follow-up and correction procedures with a view to addressing the effects of financial irregularities and crimes and reducing their recurrence.

12.2.2. For the purposes of applying the provisions of this section of the Manual, the following terms means what is explained, unless the context of the text is otherwise stated:

A. **Financial irregularities:** Any intentional miss behaviour or negligence entails that amounts are spent of state funds or entities controlled by the National Audit Office, or the loss of a financial right, or the infringing interest of its financial interests, or delays in the completion of construction projects, in particular the violation of the rules, provisions and financial procedures stipulated in the Constitution, laws, resolutions, regulations especially those contained in the

1. Articles (107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 119) of the Constitution.

2. Budget Law

3. Central Bank of Bahrain Law

4. Tenders Law

5. State Budget Law.

6. Standard Financial Manual.

7. Circulars of the implementation and preparation of the budget and final account issued by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

Examples of financial irregularities:

1. Violation of the provisions relating to the preparation and implementation of the state budget and the budgets attached to or independent of it, as well as the budgets

of other entities under the control of the National Audit Office, or those whose funds are public funds or in their judgment.

2. Violation of the provisions relating to the preparation of the final account of government Entities that are within the general budget of the state or attached to it or independent of it, as well as the budgets of other entities controlled by the National Audit Office Control, and those whose funds are public funds or in their judgment.

3. Embezzlement of funds under the control of the National Audit Office.

4. Violation of the provisions of the Tenders Law and rules and procedures for purchases and sales and stores affairs, as well as all applicable financial and accounting rules, procedures and regulations.

5. To be associated with expenses that are not necessary or not required by the public interest.

The financial irregularities are considered to be the following:

1. Not providing The National Audit Office or the Ministry of Finance and National Economy are not with the accounts and documents supporting them on time or with the papers, documents or other documents requested by either of them in order to carry out their supervision.

2. Not providing The Ministry of Finance and National Economy is not provided with the required reports in accordance with the provisions of the Budget Law.

3. Any conduct, negligence or concealment of information would hinder the National Audit Office or the Ministry of Finance and National Economy from fully conducting their supervisory functions.

4. presenting the National Audit Office or the Ministry of Finance and National Economy with incorrect data, papers or documents.

5. Where ever The entities under the control of the National Audit Office Supervision or whose funds are public funds or in their judgment shall not take the necessary measures to collect the amounts that have been lost or improperly disbursed or that have been earned and neglected in their collection, within one month of the date they are informed by the National Audit office or by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy, or from the date they verify the maturity of these amounts.

6. Not taking the actions provided for in this section.

B. Financial crimes: Any crime that falls on public money and is punishable by a criminal penalty mentioned in any of the applicable legislation, including examples of financial crimes:

1. Embezzlement of any public servant or public service person for any funds or papers - whether the embezzlement with the intention of possession, use, or otherwise - found in his possession because of his job, especially if the employee is a collection commissioner or his delegates or trustees of deposits or money changers and handed over to him the money or papers as such.

2. Any public servant or public service person shall use his or her function to seize, whether it is the seizure with the intention of ownership, use, use or otherwise, without the right to the state's or one of the government agencies mentioned in the public servant's definition of financial crimes.

3. Any public servant or public service person who is responsible for collecting fees, fines, returns, taxes or so on request or take what is not due or overdue with his knowledge.

4. Any public servant or public service person who has employed workers in the work of the State or to one of the government entities mentioned in the mentioned definition of the public servant in the scope of financial crimes is forced or unjustifiably detained their wages or some of them.

5. Any public servant or public service person entrusted with maintaining the interest of the State or one of the mentioned entities by defining the public servant in the scope of financial crimes in a transaction, operation or case and deliberately harming this interest in order to gain profit for himself or others.

6. Any public servant or public service person who has caused the error of causing serious harm to the amount of his duties is required to maintain it.

A. Public servant in the scope of financial crimes:

1. Public authority officers, employees of government ministries and interests and local administration units.

2. Members of the armed forces.

3. Members of councils and units that have a general representative status, whether elected or appointed.

4. Anyone who has been authorized by a public authority to carry out a particular work within the limits of the work delegated to him.

5. Presidents and members of the boards of directors, directors and other employees of public bodies and institutions.

6. Presidents and members of the boards of directors, directors and other employees of the subordinate units public bodies and institutions.

Wither the employment or service is permanent or temporary in full or non-paid, voluntarily or in voluntarily, and the termination of the post or service does not prevent the application of the provisions of this system when the financial crime occurs while the status is available.

D. The competent authority: the competent minister or the head of the competent government entity or whom he chooses to delegate on his behalf of the senior positions.

E. Senior positions: Positions appointed by decree or decision of the Prime Minister, or whom in his judgment and other functions determined by a decision of the Prime Minister, in accordance with the Civil Service Law.

F. The Commission of Inquiry: The commission formed to investigate cases of irregularities and financial crimes in accordance with the provisions of this system.

G. General Directorate for Combating Corruption: The General Directorate for Combating Corruption and Economic and Electronic Security at the Ministry of Interior.

H. The competent authorities: The General Directorate of Anti-Corruption or the Public Prosecution, depending on the circumstances.

Report financial irregularities and crimes

12.2.3. The competent authority in each government entity must issue a decision to allocate a box or any other appropriate arrangement to receive complaints and reports of financial irregularities and crimes in the government entity, in order to ensure the confidentiality and protection of the complainant's person or the person who comes forward, and the decision issued must determines an employee or administrative unit responsible for the following:

A. Receipt of reports of violations and financial crimes, and referral to the competent authority in the government entity.

B. Inform the concerned authorities outside the government entity when a serious suspicion of a financial violation or crime is discovered, after obtaining an approval of the competent authority.

C. Follow-up the implementation of the government entity's corrective measures for financial violations or crimes and improve internal control, and notify the National Audit Office of these procedures and their results.

D. Keeping a record-to-record cases of financial irregularities and crimes, and keeping all relevant documents and decisions.

The discovery of financial irregularities or crimes

12.2.4. Government entities must take the measures provided in this subsection as soon as a financial violation or crime is discovered, by any means, in particular:

A. Report of the National Audit Office.

B. Representatives Council.

C. Various media.

D. Internal or external financial control reports.

12.2.5. If the Directorate concerned at the Ministry of Finance and National Economy finds or suspect of a financial violation or a crime from examining the received paper or electronic financial transactions from the government entities, it must suspend the procedures, close transaction register and return the documents to the relevant government entity to take action.

12.2.6. once there is a serious suspicion of a financial violation or crime, Government Entities must take the following measures:

A. Inform the Ministry of Finance and National Economy and the National Audit Office.

B. Provide the National Audit Office with a report on the suspicion of violation or financial crime with copies of the documents supporting it within a maximum of seven days from the date of its discovery, and a copy of what has been submitted to the Ministry of Finance and The National Economy.

C. Take the necessary measures to refer the subject and all related documents to a commission of inquiry, in accordance with the terms and conditions of this system, taking into account the provisions of the holders of senior positions.

12.2.7. Disciplinary accountability procedures must be initiated within three months of the date of their immediate superior's knowledge of the financial violation, or one year from the date of the violation, whichever is earlier, otherwise the right to disciplinary accountability of the staff member is dropped, the period referred to by any investigation procedure is interrupted, the period is suspended from the last procedure, and if the staff contributing to the violation are numerous, the interruption of the period for one of them will result in a break for the remaining persons, even if the proceedings have not been taken for a conclusive period.

12.2.8. The three-month period referred to in paragraph (12.3.7) is not included in the following cases:

A. There is a kinship between the employee and his immediate superior.

B. The direct president shall be an actor or contributor to the employee in the commission of the financial violation, by instigating, agreeing or assisting.

C. The financial violation has caused serious material and moral damage to others.

12.2.9. Taking into account the provisions for the holders of senior positions, taking the measures referred to in this subsection on referral to the Commission of Inquiry is mandatory for financial irregularities that are definitively referred to in the annual report issued by the National Audit Office, and financial irregularities detected and transmitted to the government by the Ministry of Finance and National Economy.

12.2.10. If it is arising of the act that is the component of the financial violation itself, the right to impose a disciplinary penalty is not waived until the criminal proceedings have expired in accordance with the provisions of the Code of Criminal Procedure.

12.2.11. The competent authority may decide to suspend the employee from his or her full employment, for a period of not more than six months, with the payment of salary during the period of suspension, if required in accordance with the following regulations:

A. The employee shall be notified of the decision to suspend work as soon as it is issued.

B. The employee must sign the notification, and in the event that the employee refuses to sign the notification, the notification authority must prove the employee's refusal to sign and place the stamp of the competent authority, in which case the employee shall be legally notified.

Referral to the investigation and the formation of the commission of inquiry

12.2.12. The competent authority in the government entity shall issue a decision to set up a commission of inquiry into the violation, and to refer the officials charged with committing the offence or financial crime of the investigation, if they are not holders of senior positions.

12.2.13. Taking into account the provisions of the holders of senior positions, the composition of the Committee must take into account the following regulations:

A. The composition of the commission of inquiry shall be from at least one president and two other members, experienced, competent, impartial and non-poisonous.

B. Among the members of the commission of inquiry must be a member of the financial affairs team nominated by the Ministry of Finance and national economy, and a member of the legal affairs, and representatives may be hired from the Civil Service Bureau.

C. The position of the chairman of the committee shall not be less than that of the head of the department and his degree and the degree of the members of the committee shall be higher than that of the staff member referred for investigation or its level.

D. The chairman or members of the committee shall not be the direct director or head of the employee referred for investigation or related to it.

Procedures and controls of the commission of inquiry

12.2.14. The commission of inquiry should investigate the financial irregularities attributed to the employee or the officials charged with the financial irregularity, taking into account the financial irregularity of all those who committed it, and all those who contributed to it by any means of participation, whether by incitement, agreement or assistance, as well as those who are lax in reporting them or covering

up the perpetrators in any way, taking into account the responsibility of the superiors within the framework of the limits of supervisory responsibility, all of this. Without violating the civil or criminal liability of the employee if necessary.

12.2.15 Taking into account the provisions for senior positions holders, the Commission of Inquiry takes into account the following:

A. The investigation of the employee shall not begin until after he has been notified in writing of the decision to refer him to the investigation or to order an investigation within fifteen days from the date of his referral to the investigation.

B. Ensure that all financial transactions related to the financial violation are stopped during the investigation period.

C. The right of the employee referred to the investigation to see the investigation procedures and all the relevant papers, and to obtain a copy of these papers.

D. Suspending the financial authorities of employees whose work is linked to the financial transaction under investigation.

E. Begin investigation proceedings within 15 days of the date of referral to the investigation.

F. Listen to any mitigating circumstances or reasons that the staff member wishes to make before preparing the recommendation and presenting it to the competent authority.

G. The investigation must be completed within one month at the most of the start of the investigation, including the reasons for the financial violation, a perception of treatment and development solutions if possible.

H. Comply with all other investigative procedures and controls established in the Civil Service Law.

12.2.16. If the investigation of the employee accused of wrongdoing is initiated, the termination of the employee's service for any reason other than death does not prevent the completion of the investigation and his disciplinary sanctions for the offences attributed to him. If the financial violation results in the loss of one of the financial rights established in favour of the Public Treasury, the investigation procedures may be taken and the employee is held liable disciplinarily, even if the investigation has not commenced before the end of the service, up to five years from the expiry date of the service, in which case a fine may be imposed not

exceeding five times. The salary he received per month at the end of his service, provided he is found guilty.

Recommendations of the Commission of Inquiry

12.2.17. Upon completion of the investigation, the Commission of Inquiry must submit its recommendations to the competent authority within 10 days from the end of the investigation, including:

A. Recommendation to terminate the investigation for one of the following reasons:

1. Untruth, if the attributable act is not proven.

2. Not to violate, if the alleged act is proven, but this act does not constitute a financial violation.

3. In the absence of importance, if the attributable act is proven, and the financial violation is proven, but the financial violation does not result in any material or financial damage or the loss of any government right, in which case the Committee should propose the means or controls not to repeat the financial violation.

4. Insufficient evidence, in the case of insufficient evidence available to establish evidence of the authenticity or attribution of the act to the employee.

5. The right to disciplinary accountability or the right to impose disciplinary sanctions is dropped.

B. Recommending that the employee be punished appropriately from the disciplinary sanctions specified in the Executive Regulations of the Civil Service Law, in the event that the act is proven and the financial violation is proven.

C. Recommendation to inform the competent authorities if the commission considers that the facts attributed to the employee constitute a financial violation and that there is evidence that the staff member committed this financial crime, however, the Committee may be satisfied with the deterrent effect of disciplinary sanctions, given the limited gravity of the offence attributed, or the lack of the element of intent.

D. It is permissible to recommend the removal of the employee from financial affairs.

E. It is permissible to recommend that the employee compensate for any damage sought to public property if necessary.

F. Corrective action may be recommended to prevent the recurrence of a financial violation or crime in the future.

12.2.18. In preparing its recommendations, the Commission of Inquiry must take into account the following:

A. Past financial irregularities attributed to the employee, its frequency and severity.

B. The nature and consequences of the material damages resulting from the financial violation.

C. Misunderstanding or appreciation in relation to the commission of a financial violation.

D. The extent to which a cover-up or participation in the commission of a financial violation by agreement, assistance or incitement.

E. The discoverer of the financial violation (personal violation, regulatory body, etc.) and the time of proof of the financial violation.

F. The employee's ability to control the events that led to the financial violation.

G. The availability of the element of intentionality or misdeeds in the commission of the financial offense.

H. The extent to which there are guided and corrective financial measures that have been taken in the past on the subject of the financial violation to prevent it from occurring or repeating it by the government agency or the heads of the employee.

I. The material and moral cost of replacing the employee with another, in the case of recommending dismissal.

J. Gradual sanctions.

12.2.19. Taking into account the provisions of the holders of senior positions, the Commission of Inquiry shall submit its recommendations to the competent

authority of the person to which the staff member belongs, to issue a reasoned decision within 15 days from the date of the commission of inquiry making its recommendations to him, one of the following:

A. Return the investigation report to the Committee if it deems the penalty to be tightened.

B. Supporting, repealing or amending the committee's recommendations.

12.2.20. If the recommendation of the Commission of Inquiry is to sign the penalty for the dismissal of the employee from service, it must be referred from the competent authority to a disciplinary board formed by the decision of the Head of the Civil Service bureau, and the decision to refer to the Disciplinary Board must include a specific statement of the acts attributed to the employee, in accordance with the rules and procedures referred to in the Civil Service Law.

The decision of the competent authority on the financial violation

12.2.21. The Financial and Administrative Control Authority must be informed of the decision issued in relation to the financial violation by the competent authority, before notifying the employee or implementing the decision, whether that decision is to save the investigation, sign the penalty or inform the competent authorities, provided that the reporting shall be accompanied by the records of the investigation and other related papers and documents, no later than seven days after the date of the decision.

12.2.22. If the National Audit Office finds from examining the papers, if the decision to keep the matter correct, or that the penalty imposed on the violator is not commensurate with the financial violation committed, the Chief of The office shall return the papers to the issuer within 15 days of the date of receipt of the order, requesting it to reconsider the matter, either by rewarding the violator if the decision is issued for preservation, by tightening the penalty signed in proportion to the violation referred to, or the period of passage. Without a response from National Audit Office as tacit approval of the content of the decision.

12.2.23. In the case of the National Audit Office requests a review of the matter or the severity of the penalty, the government authority concerned must decide on the request of the Office within seven days at the time of receipt of the returned papers, and the relevant government entity may not violate the directives of the Office except by reason-based decision based on new facts or evidence that were not under the attention of the Office.

12.2.24. In all cases, the relevant government agency shall notify the Ministry of Finance and National Economy of the decision on the financial violation and provide it with any other statements or documents relating to the financial violation requested by that department.

12.2.25. In the event that a decision is issued to convict the employee and to impose a penalty for a financial violation, the relevant government entity must notify the State Case Authority, if necessary, to take legal action to recover the rights, and the funds that have been unlawfully disbursed, whether these amounts have been disbursed to the offending employee or others.

Conduct in the event of evidence of financial crimes

12.2.26 If the competent authority finds that the facts of the violation attributed to the employee constitute a financial violence, either prior to the investigation or on the recommendation of the commission of inquiry, and there is serious evidence that the employee committed these facts, and the disciplinary sanction is not sufficient to achieve sufficient deterrence, the following measures must be taken:

A. decision must be issued to inform the competent authorities.

B. Suspend administrative investigations, if they have begun, in the relevant facts until the financial crime has been adjudicated.

C. Referring the entire file to the relevant authorities.

D. Notify the National Audit Office and the Ministry of Finance and The National Economy of the decision issued to inform the competent authorities.

12.2.27. Despite the above, if the financial violation attributed to the employee represents a serious violation of the requirements of the duty of employment, and the evidence of the employee committing it is conclusive, the government entity may continue to hold the employee disciplined in parallel with the referral of the matter to the competent authorities or criminal trial.

12.2.28. If the issue of the violation is referred to the General Directorate Anti-Corruption, the government entity must cooperate with this directorate and provide it with the documents, and information it needs, and follow up on its decision.

12.2.29. If the General Directorate Anti- Corruption refers the matter to the Public Prosecution for serious evidence of the commission of a financial crime, the relevant government entity should follow up on the investigations before the Public

Prosecution, cooperate with it in all the documents and information it needs, and follow up on the decision issued by the Prosecution.

12.2.30. If the General Directorate of Anti-Corruption or the Public Prosecution ends up terminating the investigation or that there is no lawsuit is being filed, the relevant government entity must continue the administrative investigation, and this decision does not prevent the employee from imposing the appropriate sanction if necessary.

12.2.31. The competent authority may suspend the employee from work if he or she is referred for criminal investigation or during a criminal trial for six months with full pay during the suspension period, if it is in the interest of investigation or work, or to prevent the employee from influencing witnesses or evidence.

12.2.32. At least two weeks before the end of the suspension period and not more than one month, the order is submitted to the competent authority to consider the extension of the suspension, and the suspension may be extended for other similar periods if the reasons for the suspension continue or the necessity required by the labour authority.

12.2.33. If the Public Prosecution decides to remand the employee in custody, he is considered suspended for the duration of his imprisonment and suspends half of his salary, and after the end of the prison he shall be paid if the investigation is kept or the court sentences him to his innocence.

12.2.34. If the Public Prosecution refers the financial crime to the Criminal Court for serious evidence of the commission of a financial crime, the relevant government entity must notify the State Case Service to follow up on the trial and take civil prosecution proceedings if the case so requires.

12.2.35. The government entity, in coordination with the State Cases Service, must follow up on the criminal court's ruling on financial crime and then complete the administrative investigation into the disciplinary section based on the final judgment of the criminal case, whatever its content.

12.2.36. The decision of the Criminal Court of Acquittal does not prevent the re-examination of the disciplinary part and the appropriate punishment for the employee, if necessary, unless the sentence issued on the objective innocence is established that the employee did not commit the act attributed to him, within the limits of the facts that the judge has established that the employee did not commit it.

12.2.37. If the final conviction of the employee for the financial violation is handed down, the Commission of Inquiry recommends that the appropriate penalty be imposed only in the disciplinary aspect, and the Commission may not re-investigate the extent of the criminal verdict have been established by convicting the employee.

12.2.38. If the court's conviction includes the imprisonment of the employee, the employee is deemed suspended from his job and deprived of his salary, and the competent authority may agree at the request of the employee or his family to agree to pay his salary to his family, which he or she receives if the period of imprisonment exceeds three months, provided that his pension benefits are sufficient to cover the amount spent, in which case the amounts spent are deducted from his pension benefits upon retirement.

12.2.39. The competent authority may return the employee to his or her post after the expiry of his or her term of imprisonment, if disciplinary accountability procedures do not end until his dismissal, in which case his removal from financial affairs must be considered.

12.2.40. In any case, the government entity must notify the Ministry of Finance and the National Economy of the final outcome, regarding the conduct of the competent authorities or the court in the matter of financial crime.

Provisions for senior positions

12.2.41 If the employee accused of the violation or financial crime is a high-ranking official, a report on the facts and acts attributed to him and the evidence supporting the charge must be presented to the competent authority to present it to the Office of the Prime Minister, to issue his decision to refer the staff member to the investigation, to inform the competent authorities or to keep the matter on the case.

12.2.42. The investigation of the holders of senior positions shall be carried out by a special disciplinary committee or by the competent authority of his employer in accordance with the provisions and controls specified in the referral decision for investigation.

12.2.43. The decision to transfer a senior position employee for investigation must include a statement of the facts and acts that constitute the financial irregularities against him and the evidence supporting the charge and inform the officer referred

in a manner that is not insignia of this decision at least 15 days prior to the date of the investigation.

12.2.44. The Commission of Inquiry on Senior position employee is committed to the same general controls as the commissions of inquiry on non-senior employee.

12.2.45. Suspension and disciplinary sanctions against senior office holders shall be decided by the Prime Minister.

12.2.46. Excluding supervisory liability, if the violation or financial crime is indivisible and the number of employees contributing to it, they are dealt with in accordance with the procedures and provisions of the highest level of employment.

Corrective action

12.2.47. Within one month of the date of the proof of the violation or financial crime, the relevant government entity must take the necessary measures to correct the irregularities and financial crimes and collect the amounts that have been improperly disbursed or that have been earned and neglected in their collection, by themselves or by informing the State Case Authority to take appropriate legal action, and notifying the National Audit Office and the Ministry of Finance and national economy as a result of the corrective actions taken.

12.2.48. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy studies and analyses cases of irregularities and financial crimes received from government entity.

12.2.49. The Minister of Finance and National Economy, if he considers it feasible, may appoint, after coordination with the competent authority, a competent official as a financial controller in the government entity, and the Minister of Finance and National Economy shall determine his terms of reference and functions.

12.2.50. If the frequency of financial irregularities and crimes in a government entity is found to be repeated or serious, radical solutions to prevent their recurrence are required, and it is not feasible to appoint a financial controller, which shall be submitted to the Council of Ministers to take what it deems appropriate, as follows:

A. The formation of an independent commission, including financial and legal elements, to consider these irregularities and financial crimes, and to develop the necessary measures to correct them and prevent them in the future, which may include:

1. Review the structure of the financial affairs of the government entity concerned.

2. Control their financial behavior.

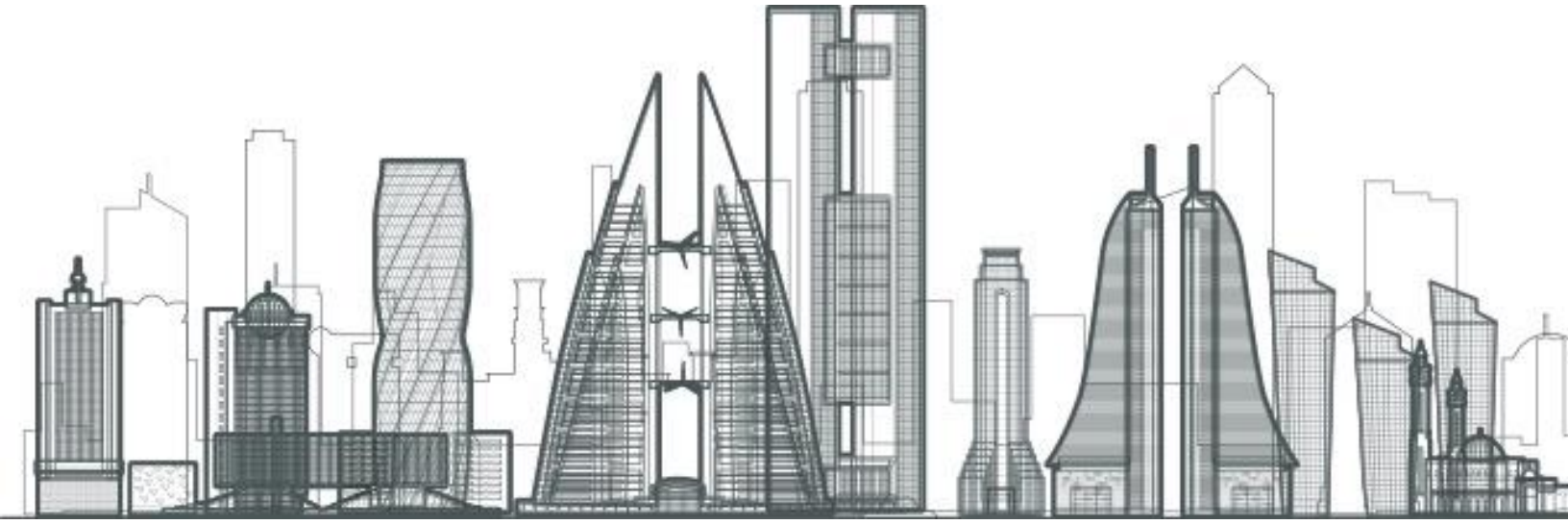
3. Take necessary measures to collect and recover the amounts that have been lost or improperly spent or that have been earned and neglected in collecting them.

4. Propose to amend existing financial procedures, regulations or legislation to fill gaps that have caused financial irregularities or crimes

5. Save the subject, with the alert to the competent authority to take the necessary.

12.2.51. The Ministry of Finance and National Economy and the ministry concerned must keep a classified record to record cases of financial irregularities and crimes, and to keep all relevant documents and decisions.

13. Miscellaneous Systems



General Description of the Section		
Coverage	This section regulates the provisions and control procedures on topics with multiple financial aspects that cannot be classified under a specific section of this guide	
Directorates supervising the main operations of this section	**Directorate**	**Responsibility**
	Different Directorates	Depending on the nature of each topic classified under this .section

13.1. Government attachés

General provisions

13.1.1. Financial transactions of government attaché are subject to the supervision of the government entity in which it follows.

13.1.2. The Attaché must abide by the application of the provisions and procedures contained in the laws issued, and apply the regulations of this Manual unless this subsection specifies other provisions or procedures for overseas missions, and if it is not possible or impractical to apply these regulations, the Mission applies the instructions specified by the government entity supervising it.

13.1.3. The Head of the Attaché is responsible for ensuring that the staff of the attaché are committed to applying the provisions and procedures contained in this subsection.

Budget control

13.1.4. The Financial Resources Directorate or whom in its judgment must coordinate with the Attaché to assess its financial needs within the annual budget, and notify the attaché at the beginning of each fiscal year of the budget allocations allocated to it within the general budget.

13.1.5. The Attaché is responsible for controlling the disbursement of the funds allocated to it, and implementing procedures that include:

A. Complying with the specific provisions and procedures within this system.

B. Spending within the approved budget.

C. Using the budget for its intended purposes

D. Charging the expenditure to the appropriate budget codes.

E. Maintaining necessary records to follow up expenditure and available budget.

F. Preparing monthly report for budget, actual expenditures, unpaid commitments, cash flows and bank & cash balances.

13.1.6 The Finance Directorate at the relevant Government Entity shall, after the approval of MOFNE, allocate a permanent financial imprest, which shall not exceed a quarter of attaché annual budget.

13.1.7 The Governmental attaché shall use the financial imprest to pay expenditures allocated in their budget. Governmental attaché may not use the allocated budget for unauthorized expenditures or for the payments of unrelated activities or responsibilities.

13.1.8 At the request of Governmental attaché, the concerned Government Entity may, after coordinate with the Payments and Collection Directorate at the Ministry

of Finance and National Economy, pay directly to a supplier, or transfer money to the attaché to pay specific expenses or commitments outside of the financial imprest.

Control Over Bank Accounts

13.1.9 The Governmental attaché shall, on approval of Finance Directorate at the concerned Government Entity, open bank account(s) as needed, which shall be utilized for payments and deposit of revenues and amounts transferred from budget.

13.1.10 Revenues and amounts transferred from budget shall be deposits immediately at attaché bank account.

13.1.11 Cheques shall be jointly signed by head of Governmental attaché or their deputy & the Head of the Diplomatic Mission or their deputy.

13.1.12 Unused cheques shall be held by the of Head of Governmental attaché or their deputy.

13.1.13 Governmental attaché shall prepare monthly bank reconciliation and send it to the Finance Directorate (or equivalent) at the Government Entity.

Recruitment or Delegation in the Attachés

13.1.14 The recruitment or delegation of Bahrainis employees, their salaries and allowances shall be in accordance to civil service rules issued by the Civil Service Bureau.

13.1.15 The recruitment of local employees shall be subject to the approval of the concerned Government Entity, and in accordance with the salary scales and conditions of employment determined by the diplomatic mission in the country in which the Governmental attaché based, as well as other local labour laws and regulations.

Petty Cash

13.1.16 In countries where cheques are not accepted, the attaché may establish a cash float to pay its expenses and petty cash, and it should coordination with the Finance Directorate at the concerned Government Entity to determine the amount

of amount of the cash float, provided that it shall not exceed 25 per cent of the attaché's monthly budget.

13.1.17 The cash float shall be kept at the custody of a cashier or any other employee designated by Head of attaché, whom shall be responsible for the safeguard of the cash and maintaining proper records.

13.1.18 The cash float shall be kept in a safe with proper specifications to safeguard cash from theft, lost or any other contingencies. Safe shall be placed in a secured place.

13.1.19 A surprise cash count for the cash float shall be carried out at least every three months by an accountant with, the result of the cash count shall be documented in the– Cash Count Statement Form No. MF0803.

13.1.20 Spending out of the cash float shall approved by the Head of attaché or their deputy, by using Expense Voucher.

13.1.21 The attaché may pay petty cash expenses out of the cash float based on supporting invoices or cash memos, in compliance with the petty cash policies set out in this manual, which shall be grouped at the end of each month or when reimburse is required.

13.1.22 The cash float may be reimbursed when the total payments reach 75 per cent or more of the amount.

13.1.23 After the Governmental entity verifying and confirming the cultural Attaché imprest, will then send the requests for imprest replenishment for cultural Attaché to the MOFNE.

13.1.24 The Government entity should use the below listed forms, supported with required documents below:

1. Model No. 4 (Request for advance replenishment)
2. Model No. 3 (Payment/Receipts Statement)
3. Bank Reconciliation statement.
4. Bank Statement.
5. Cash Count Statement.
6. Invoice Register.

Purchases

13.1.25 The Government Entity shall coordinate with the Tender Board regarding purchases procedures that should be followed by Attaché, for purchases limits that requires public tender.

13.1.26 The Finance Directorate at the Government Entity shall determine the purchasing methods which may be used by Attaché. Including the limits of purchasing out of cash float, direct purchase or through bids, with approval by the Central Efficiency Directorate.

13.1.27 Standard agreements and contract issued by related Diplomatic Missions shall be used wherever possible, and the approval of the Finance Directorate at concerned Government Entity shall be obtained prior to sign non-standard agreement and contract forms. Contracts shall be signed by head of Attaché or their deputy & the Head of the Diplomatic Mission or their deputy.

13.1.28 The Attaché shall purchase goods and services through standard procurement processes, detailed in this manual, wherever possible, including issuing of PO's and if is not possible, it may issue a cheque direct to supplier, or by cash from the cash float, supported by invoice or cash receipt.

Procedures

Payment Procedures

13.1.29 The accountant in charge shall prepare a payment voucher for each issued cheque, or amount paid out of the cash float, except petty cash expenses where one payment voucher for total expenses may be prepared.

13.1.30 The accountant in charge shall record promptly details of cheque, cash payments and issued payments vouchers, in the payment/receipts statement.

13.1.31 In order to replenish the permanent financial imprest, the Attaché shall prepare and send Request for advance replenishment (Model no. 4) attached with payment/receipts statement (Model no. 3) and supported payment documents, to the Finance Directorate at concerned Government authority not later than the second week of the month following that replenish request

Local Employees' Salaries & Wages Payment Procedures

13.1.32 The Attaché shall prepare ‘Statement of salaries & wages of local employees’ on a monthly basis, filled with the required data.

1. Salaries paid through cheques: one cheque shall be prepared for each employee's net salary. A payment Voucher shall be prepared for each cheque, the beneficiary signature shall be obtained at the payment voucher.

2. Transfer of salaries to bank accounts: a Payment Voucher shall be prepared for the total amount of employees' net salaries. Cheque or payment order of the salaries amount shall be prepared and sent to the bank with statement showing employees net salary and their accounts.

3. Cash salaries: a Payment Voucher shall be prepared for total amount of employees' net salaries, with one cheque for same amount. Each employee shall receive their net salary after signing in the Statement of Salaries.

13.1.33 Other than salaries, the Attaché may pay any due deductions through cheque or payment order.

13.1.34 The Attaché shall attach and send a copy of the salaries statement with the Payment Vouchers after record to the Government entity.

Processing of Revenues

13.1.35 A receipt voucher shall be prepared for revenue amounts received by the Attaché and shall be recorded promptly.

13.1.36 Received cash and cheques shall be deposited at bank not later than the following working day.

13.1.37 The Attaché's revenue shall be treated as public revenue and deposited to Consolidated Fund and not be added to attaché allocated budget.

13.1.38 The Attaché may retain amounts received and not transfer it to the Finance Directorate at the Government Entity. However, such amounts shall be deducted from the first amount transferred to the attaché to compensate the disbursed from the permanent financial imprest.

Control Over Fixed Assets

13.1.39 The Control of Fixed Assets section No. (11) of the Standard Finance Manual shall be followed to control over fixed assets. Whenever its possible.

Control Over Motor Vehicles

13.1.40 Monitoring of attaché vehicles is subject to the provisions and procedures specified in "Recurring Expenses" section No. (5) regarding government vehicles, when appropriate.

13.1.41 The Attaché is responsible for the insurance and registration of its motor vehicles to local laws and regulations of the host country.

Provisions & Procedures for Students Entitlement

13.1.42 At the beginning of each academic year, the Directorate of Cultural Relations and Scholarship at the Ministry of Education shall prepare a statement of entitlements and fees due to its students abroad for each Cultural Attaché, indicating the amounts allocated to each student (university fees, monthly allowances, books etc.). This statement shall be sent to Directorate of Financial Resources at the Ministry of Finance and National Economic and a copy to the concerned Cultural Attaché and Central Efficiency Directorate at the MOFNE.

13.1.43 The Directorate of Financial recourses at the Ministry of Education shall determine the frequency of transfer of student entitlements to the allocated bank account and advise the Cultural Attaché concerned accordingly.

13.1.44 A separate bank account shall be established for the transfer of entitlements due to students of MOE. Other Government Entities students' entitlements which are transferred to the Cultural Attaché shall be transferred to the same bank account. The relevant Government Entities need to notify the Directorate of Financial recourses at the Ministry of Education of their student entitlements transferred directly to the Cultural Attaché.

13.1.45 Each Cultural attaché shall prepare & authorize on a monthly basis or at entitlements payment dates, a Statement of Student entitlements payable through 'Statement of Student Allowances'. Student entitlements may be paid through any of the following methods:

1. Transfer to bank accounts: One payment voucher shall be prepared for total student's entitlements. Cheque or payment order of total entitlements shall be prepared and sent to the bank with statement showing students allowances and their accounts.

2. Cheques Payments: One cheque shall be prepared for each student. Separate payment voucher is prepared for each cheque. the beneficiary signature shall be obtained at the payment voucher.

3. Cash payments: One payment voucher shall be prepared for total amount of students' entitlements, with one cheque for same amount. Each student shall receive their entitlements after signing in the Statement of Salaries.

Forms and Documents Preparation and Authorization

13.1.46 Summary of the Prepare & Authorize of Forms & Specimens used:

No.	Form / Specimens	Preparations		Review / Approval
		Frequency	Employees	
1	Cheques	On payment	Accountant	Head of Diplomatic Mission & head attaché
2	Notification of budget allocation	Annually	Accountant	Director of human & financial recourses (or equivalent)
3	Expense Voucher	On payment	Accountant	Attaché head
4	Payment/Receipts Statement	On payment or receive	Accountant	Accountant
5	Request for advance Replenishment	Monthly	Accountant	Attaché head

No.	Form / Specimens	Preparations		Review / Approval
		Frequency	Employees	
6	Statement of salaries & wages of local employees	Monthly	Accountant	Attaché head
7	Statement of Student Allowances	Monthly	Accountant	Attaché head
8	Receipt Voucher	On receipt	Cashier	Accountant
9	Cash Count Statement	periodically	Cashier	Attaché head & Accountant
10	Bank Reconciliation Statement	Monthly	Accountant	Attaché head
11	Purchase Order	On purchase	Accountant	Attaché head
12	Fixed Assets Inventory Statement	Annually	Inventory Officer	Attaché head & Accountant

13.1.47 The Deputy of Head of Diplomatic Mission & Deputy of Head of attaché (or equivalent) may approve documents specified at this subsection, if they act in place of Diplomatic Mission Head or attaché Head.

13.1.48 The Finance Directorate at the Government Entity may amend Forms and Specimens specified in this subsection as needed, providing that it should include required data that insure completeness and correctness of payment, receipt, and bank and cash balance details.

13.1.49 Records and documents specified in this subsection may be prepared and stored electronically, taking into account availability of security procedures that ensure the completeness and correctness of data and that computer data is not amended by an authorized person. Backup of documents and records should be maintained.